## IBN AL-JAZZĀR <br> ON SEXUAL DISEASES AND THEIR TREATMENT



TRANSLATION AND STUDY BY
GERRIT BOS

## IBN AL-JAZZĀR ON SEXUAL DISEASES AND THEIR TREATMENT



# The Sir Henry Wellcome Asian SERIES 

Editors<br>Lawrence I. Conrad, London<br>Paul U. Unschuld, München<br>Dominik Wujastyk, London<br>Editorial Board<br>Ronald E. Emmerick, Hamburg<br>Donald J. Harper, Tucson<br>Lutz Richter--Bernburg, Leipzig<br>Alriady Published<br>Ibn al-Jazzār on Forgetfulness and its Treatment: Gerrit Bos<br>Early Chinese Medical Literature: Donald J. Harper<br>Ibn al-Jazzār on Sexual Diseases and their Treatment: Gerrit Bos<br>Forthcoming<br>Al-Kindī on Weather-Forecasting: Gerrit Bos and Charles Burnett<br>A Soup for the Qan: Paul D. Buell and Eugene N. Anderson<br>Ibn al-Jazzār on Fevers: Gerrit Bos

# IbN AL-JAZZĀR ON SEXUAL DISEASES and their Treatment 

A critical edition of Zād al-musāfir wa-qūt al-hādir
Provisions for the Traveller and Nourishment for the Sedentary Book 6

The original Arabic text
With an English translation, introduction and commentary by
GERRIT BOS

First published in 1997 by
Kegan Paul International
This edition first published in 2010 by
Routledge
2 Park Square, Milton Park, Abingdon, Oxon, OX14 4RN
Simultaneously published in the USA and Canada by Routledge
270 Madison Avenue, New York, NY 10016
Routledge is an imprint of the Taylor \& Francis Group, an informa business
(C) Gerrit Bos 1997

Transferred to Digital Printing 2010

All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reprinted or reproduced or utilised in any form or by any electronic, mechanical, or other means, now known or hereafter invented, including photocopying and recording, or in any information storage or retrieval system, without permission in writing
from the publishers.
British Library Cataloguing in Publication Data
A catalogue record for this book is available from the British Library

ISBN 10: 0-7103-0569-9 (hbk)
ISBN 13: 978-0-7103-0569-5 (hbk)

## Publisher's Note

The publisher has gone to great lengths to ensure the quality of this reprint but points out that some imperfections in the original copies may be apparent. The publisher has made every effort to contact original copyright holders and would welcome correspondence from those they have been unable to trace.

## CONTENTS

Preface ..... 1
Introduction

1. Biography ..... 5
2. Literary activity ..... 7
3. The Zäd al-musāfir wa qūt al-hāạir ..... 8
4. The manuscripts of the Zād al-musāfir ..... 11
5. Survey and evaluation of the contents of book six of the Zäd al-musāfir ..... 17
Arabic text ..... 71
Translation ..... 239
Glossary of materia medica ..... 311
Glossary of technical terms (Arabic) ..... 337
Index of proper names (Arabic) ..... 375
Glossary of technical terms (English) ..... 377
Index of proper names (English) ..... 399
Bibliography ..... 405
http://taylorandfrancis.com

## PREFACE

My interest in Ibn al-Jazzār's medical compendium, called Zād almusāfir wa-qūt al-hādir (Provisions for the Traveller and Nourishment for the Sedentary) was aroused for the first time while I was working on a critical edition of Qusṭā ibn Lūqā's medical regime for the pilgrims to Mecca, entitled Risāla fì tadbir safar al-hajj, which was published in 1992 by E.J. Brill, Leiden, The Netherlands. In the course of systematic research into other medical texts belonging to the genre of health guides for the traveller, I extensively consulted the Zād al-musāfir and became impressed by its lucidity, comprehensiveness and preservation of ancient lost material. It contains many valuable quotations from the works of famous physicians and philosophers, such as Hippocrates, Aristotle, Rufus, Galen, Paul of Aegina, and Polemon.

This conclusion was confirmed when I again consulted the Zād al-musāfir some time later, while preparing an edition of Ibn al-Jazzār's treatise on forgetfulness and its treatment, entitled Risāla fì al-nisyān wa-'ilājihi, which was published in 1995 in

The Wellcome Asian Series by The Royal Asiatic Society, London. It was then that I became convinced of the desirability of a critical edition and translation of the Zād al-musāfir, which was, moreover, one of the most influential medical handbooks in the history of Western medicine. Already by the beginning of the 11th century, it had been translated into Greek under the title Ephodia tou apodēmountos and widely distributed. In 1124 it was translated into Latin under the title Viaticum peregrinantis by Constantine the African, and it was commented upon by the Salernitan masters as from the thirteenth century. Once accepted into the so-called Articella or Ars medicinae, a compendium of medical textbooks, it was widely used in medical schools (Salerno, Montpellier), and in universities (Bologna, Paris, Oxford). It was popular in Jewish circles as well, as is attested by the fact that it was translated thrice into Hebrew and that it is quoted in Jewish medical and didactic literature.

While I was doing research for an article on sexuality in Islamic medical literature, I found Ibn al-Jazzār's discussion of this subject in Book Six not only to be very interesting, but also of major importance for the history of sexuality, because it was one of the main sources for Latin medieval tracts treating the same subject. I have therefore decided to give priority to an edition of this book.

At this occasion I thank the Trust of The Wellcome Foundation for giving me the opportunity to prepare this edition by means of a Research Fellowship at the Wellcome Institute for the History of Medicine. I thank Professor Hans Daiber and Professor David Pingree for their valuable corrections. I thank Dr Wim Raven for
his help in preparing a camera-ready copy of the text. I am especially grateful to Dr Lawrence Conrad for checking my text and translation and offering many suggestions for improvements.
http://taylorandfrancis.com

## INTRODUCTION

## 1. Biography

Abu Ja‘far Aḥmad b. Abī Khalid ibn al-Jazzăr, born in Qayrawăn, the medieval capital of Tunisia, hailed from a family of physicians. ${ }^{1}$ His father Ibrähim was a doctor, as was his paternal uncle Aba Bakr. He studied with the famous Jewish philosopher and physician Isḥăq b. Sulaymān al-Isrā'ili i (ca. 243/855-343/955), ${ }^{2}$ who had been a student of Ishāqq ibn 'Imrān (d. 296/908), ${ }^{3}$ and who at the age of fifty emigrated from Egypt

[^0]to Qayrawãn, where he was appointed court physician by the Fattimid caliph 'Ubaydallah al-Mahdı. Ibn al-Jazzār started a practice of his own in his native city, where he died in the year 979/980. ${ }^{4}$

He led an austere life, devoting himself to the study and practice of medicine. Every summer he used to travel to alMunastir on the Mediterranean coast where he would stay in a famous Sufi-cell. He did not look for a position, like many of his colleagues did, at one of the princely courts. As part of his medical practice he received and examined his patients during the hours of consultation, and analysed their urine. His servant Rashiq would then administer to them the required medicines, free of charge. When he died, well over eighty years old, he left 24,000 dinārs and twenty-five qinṭars' 5 weight of books on medicine and other subjects.

[^1]
## 2. Literary activity

Skilled in a variety of sciences including history and geography, Ibn al-Jazzar was a prolific author, especially in the field of medicine. His writings earned him great fame and made him very influential in medieval Western Europe. ${ }^{6}$

His Kitāb al-adwiya al-mufrada (Treatise on Simple Drugs) was translated into Greek, Latin and Hebrew, and was frequently copied. Through its Latin translation by Constantine the African, under the title Liber de gradibus, it become one of the most popular pharmacopeia in the Latin West. His TTibb al-fuqarā' wa-al-masākin (Medicine for the Poor) ${ }^{7}$ represents a literary genre which was especially popular during the Middle Ages, when it was practised by different authors, as, for instance, al-Rāzi ${ }^{8}$ and Peter of Spain. ${ }^{9}$

[^2]3. The Zad al-musāfir wa-qut al-hadir (Provisions for the Traveller and Nourishment for the Sedentary)

This work is not, as the title suggests, a guide for the traveller, but a systematic medical handbook, discussing the different diseases and their treatment a capite ad calcem (from head to toe) in a concise form. ${ }^{10}$ On the reason for its composition and its form, Ibn al-Jazzār states in the introduction to his Ṭibb alfuqarā':

I have seen how many great and excellent physicians have composed books on the treatment of the diseases which may affect each of the limbs [of the body], with the intention of composing a work fitted for regular consultation. Some of these works, however, are longer and more detailed than necessary, while others are shorter than necessary. Knowing this, I have composed a work on the treatment of the diseases which may affect each of the limbs of the body and I have called it "Zad al-musafir wa-qut al-hadir". I left out everything that might spoil it by making it too burdensome, too long, too complicated and too profound. Word of it spread in the countries and it was well received by the physicians. ${ }^{11}$

According to this proceeding Ibn al-Jazzar devotes most of his attention to therapy; less is said about aetiology and symptology, while physiology is almost completely neglected. But in spite of the good reputation which the $Z \bar{a} d$ acquired for itself, Ibn al-

[^3]Jazzār was not blind to its limitations and deficiencies, and recognised at a certain moment the necessity of the composition of a new work. This is clear from the continuance of the introduction to the Țibb al-fuqar $\vec{a}$ ' where he remarks:


#### Abstract

But I saw how many poor and destitute people were unable to profit from this work (Zad al-musafir) and from other works composed by the physicians on the preservation of the health of the healthy and the healing of the afflictions of the sick, because they were poor and unable to find those means by which they could be treated and healed from their diseases, namely, food, potions and drugs. Nor could they get a physician who knows the required quantity and quality of these ingredients. I therefore decided, for the medical training of him who may be versed ${ }^{12}$ in this work of mine, I mean the Zad al-musafir, and who has a comprehensive knowledge from it about the diseases, their causes, symptoms, and different ways of treatment, to compile [a book] on the drugs which can be found with the slightest effort and trouble. For in this way it will be easy for the physicians to treat the poor and destitute of the common people with these drugs which I have collected from the works of Galen, Dioscurides, Paul and other excellent physicians. ${ }^{13}$


But despite these limitations, the Zäd al-musāfir is without any doubt his most important work. It contains many valuable quotations from the works of famous physicians and philosophers, such as Hippocrates, Aristotle, Rufus, Galen, Paul of Aegina, and Polemon. Already by the beginning of the 11th century, it had been translated into Greek under the title 'Epó $\delta 1 \alpha$ тov̂ $\dot{\alpha} \pi \circ \delta \eta \mu \circ \hat{v} \tau \tau \circ$ and widely distributed. ${ }^{14}$

Its popularity in Jewish circles is attested by the fact that it was translated thrice into Hebrew; namely, by an anonymous

[^4]translator under the title Yäir Nativ in 1124, then by Moses ibn Tibbon in 1254 under the title Zedat ha-Derakhim, and finally by Abraham Ben Isaac as Zedāh la-Orehim. ${ }^{15}$

The Hebrew translation by Moses ibn Tibbon was one of the main sources for Moshe Narboni's medical compendium called Sefer Orah Hayyim (composed 1350), as already recognised by the anonymous scribe of MS Munich $243 .{ }^{16}$ R. Judah ben Samuel ibn Abbas (13th cent.) recommends in his Sefer Ya'ir Nativ students to read as part of their curriculum the Zedat haDerakhim. ${ }^{17}$

Translated into Latin by Constantine the African in 1124 under the title Viaticum peregrinantis, and commented upon by the Salernitan masters as from the thirteenth century, Ibn al-Jazzar's Zād became one of the most influential medical handbooks in medieval Europe. Being accepted into the so-called Articella or Ars medicinae, a compendium of medical textbooks, it was widely used in medical schools (Salerno, Montpellier), and in universities (Bologna, Paris, Oxford). ${ }^{18}$

[^5]It not only offered a traditional pathology, but also new objects of reflection for the Western physician. The first book, dealing with the diseases of the head, complemented the information on the cerebral functions given by Nemesius of Emesa (4th cent.) in his On the nature of man and by al-Majasi (10th cent.) in his medical encyclopaedia called Kāmil al-sinā‘a al-tịbbīya or al-Kitāb almalaki.

The chapter on melancholy was, next to Ishạq ibn 'Imrãn's monograph on the same subject, the point of departure for further developments in Christian Western Europe, where this concept played a prominent role in medicine and literature. The mental pathology of the $Z \bar{a} d$ stressed the role played by the malady called 'ish (passionate love). Translated by Constantine as eros and by one of his students as heros, passionate love turned into "heroic passion", a disease most of all affecting noblemen, and frequently discussed in Western medicine, philosophy and literature. ${ }^{19}$ The section on women's diseases was the major source for one of the Trotula treatises on gynaecology produced in Salerno in the 12th century, namely, the Cum Auctor. ${ }^{20}$

## 4. The manuscripts of the Zād al-musāfir

1. Berlin 252 (=Qu 683); Judaeo-Arabic; 150 fols.; Bk. 6 covers fols. 107-130; the text is written in a clear oriental script.
[^6]It was probably copied in the 14th-15th cent. In my edition it bears the sign B. ${ }^{21}$
2. Dresden 209: 339 fols.; the Zād covers fols. 1-303; Bk. 6 covers fols. 214-248; this manuscript is in general not very correct; it is unvocalised, while diacritical points are sometimes omitted and often confused. It has been copied by four different hands: a . from fols. 1-78, the handwriting is rather correct; b . fols. 79-269, different handwriting, very untidy in fols. 250-260; c. fols. 270-288, different handwriting, regular and correct; d. fols. 290-339, different rather careless handwriting; fols. 290 and 291 contain marginal passages taken from the Koran as a remedy for scabies, probably added by a pious copyist; the copying of the manuscript was completed in the year 1091/1680. In my text edition it is indicated by the sign D. 22
3. Oxford, Bodleian Huntington 302: 191 fols.; this manuscript is incomplete. The text of the $Z \bar{a} d$ starts with Bk. 2, ch. 7: "wa-qad kāna ba‘du al-aṭibbã’ yusammì al-udhn bāb al'aql"; Bk. 6 covers fols. 150-178; it misses a rather long section in ch. 1 . The text, vocalised and provided with diacritical points, was copied in the year 738/1337, and is therefore the oldest surviving manuscript. It is indicated in my edition with the sign O. ${ }^{23}$

[^7]4. Teheran, Malik 4486; this MS is incomplete since it starts with Bk .1 , towards the end of ch. 12 , reading: "al-'arabi wa-ma ashbaha dhalika, wa-na'muruhu an...". The text is unvocalised, but provided with diacritical points; it was copied in the year $994 / 1586$. The copyist was rather careless and did not very well understand the text in hand; this has resulted in many corruptions and omissions. It is indicated in my edition with the sign T. ${ }^{24}$
5. Copenhagen 109: 184 fols.; the $Z \bar{a} d$ covers fols. 1-180. This manuscript has been copied from MS Dresden, as became clear to me when I compared both MSS, and found that they are identical except for some errors and corrections. In MS Copenhagen the following corrections have been added in the margins: a. l. 55: li-ghalaba for li-qilla (li-'illa MSS BOT); l. 108: wa-bizr for wa-başal; 1. 205: muthïra for munāra (dārra MSS BOT); 1. 214: rijäl for nisā', Athiniyā for anisiyā (Athiniyā MSS OT); 1. 216: aghnos for a'mas (aghnos MS T); 1. 779: yusaffā for yudaqqu; 1. 795: al-dam for al-waram. Moreover, the name of Allah which features most frequently in MS Dresden, has systematically been omitted from MS C. The identity between both MSS may also be derived from the incipit, stating: "Liber medicus Kitāb zād al-musāfir ... ex codice manuscripto Seebischiano, sed eo non optimae notae, foliorum 302, descripsi." It was copied by Jo. Jac. Reiske, who started in Dresden in August 1747 and completed the copying on September 11 of the same year in Leipzig (fol. 180). Since it is a copy of Dresden, I have not used it for my critical edition.

[^8]6. Paris 2884: 339 fols.; the Zad features on fols. 1-303; this manuscript is a modern copy of Dresden as well, and therefore not used for the edition. ${ }^{25}$
7. MS Wellcome A 463; this MS, part of the former Sämi Ibrahim Haddad collection and consisting of 30 fols., only covers Bk. 1, chs. 1-18. ${ }^{26}$
8. MS Tarim, al-Aḥqăf Library 2643; see addendum.

These are the MSS of the Zäd al-musāfir which I have studied for my critical edition. Other MSS which I could not consult, since, despite all my efforts, I could not obtain copies of them, are:

1. Algiers 1746 , fols. $1-75,10$ cent. H. (16th cent. A.D.). ${ }^{27}$
2. Cairo $\mathrm{VI}^{1}$, 37, țibb, maj. 37 m (fols. 1-39a, 11 cent. H.
(17th cent. A.D.).
3. Rabaṭ 1718 (fols. 1b-222a).
4. Izmir, Milli 50/470 (26636). ${ }^{28}$

The bibliographers mention two more MSS of the Zad almusäfir, namely, Dublin, Chester Beatty 5224, fols. 50b-88a, and Washington, Army Medical Library 92/1, fols. 1-73. Their information, however, is incorrect. These MSS do not contain Ibn al-Jazzär's Zād al-musāfir as the bibliographers suggest, but his TTibb al-fuqarā ${ }^{\prime} .{ }^{29}$ The bibliographers were most probably

[^9]misled by the introduction to the Țibb al-fuqara' in which Ibn alJazzăr, as we saw above, first of all refers to the reason of the composition of the Zād al-musāfir, its merits and deficiencies, and only then proceeds to a discussion of the necessity of the composition of a new work, namely, the TTibb al-fuqarā'. ${ }^{30}$

Besides the above-mentioned manuscripts, Ibn al-Jazzăr's Zadd al-musāfir has been partly edited (Bks. 1-3) by Suwaysi-alRadia. ${ }^{31}$ This edition is, however, very unsatisfactory for the following reasons: 1 . The authors did not try to establish the relationship between the different MSS. 2. They based their edition on MS Paris, which is a modern copy of MS Dresden. 3. MS Berlin, which in general offers better readings and therefore should have been one of the basic MSS, is not mentioned at all. 4. MS Oxford, which belongs to the same family as MS Berlin, is only consulted for variants. 5. They did not notice that MS Copenhagen is a copy of Dresden, and have therefore used it as an independent witness to the text. 6. There are no source references.

The MSS which I consulted for my edition are Berlin, Oxford, Teheran and Dresden. My edition is mainly based on BOT since the readings preserved by these MSS are often better than those of MS Dresden; cf. following table:

|  | MS BOT | MS D |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| 1. 4 | 'ishrūn | 'ashr |
| 1.7 | al-ladhdha | al-dariyya |

[^10]1. 39
2. 58
3. $61,62,64-67$
4. 71
5. 215
6. 233
7. 236
8. 253
9. 295
10. 356
11. 408
12. 431
13. 441
14. 492
15. $563,595,609$
16. 676
17. 783
18. 825
I. 981
19. 1213
al-dimägh
yakthuru
li-‘illa
ifrat
baqiya
Athiniya (athlana T )
al-suryantyin (al-suryan T )
al-imdha'
wa-ishtahaha
yahburu
al-hadda
al-hajiz
bi-l-fashaqi
fa-amma ihtibas al-tamth
wa-fuqqäh al-idhkhir
tamada
al-muqabila
al-dam
namat
wa-natawaqqa
al-indifa ${ }^{\text {a }}$
yakünu
li-qilla
afwăh
qáada
anisǐya
al-yunaniyin
al-amr
wa-ashbahahā
уајidu
al-haditha
al-muta'akhkhar
bi-l-'ashafi
fa-khurāj al-tamth
wa-tuffah al-idhkhir
ta'adhat
al-mufrada
al-fam
thabata
wa-huwa fi

Moreover, the readings preserved by these MSS represent in many cases the longer, more correct ones, contrary to MS Dresden.

Unfortunately, it proved to be impossible to establish a stemma precisely defining the relationship of these MSS, because of the contaminated state of the tradition. ${ }^{32}$ For instance, BT are repeatedly in agreement against DO, BD against OT, and BO against DT. The textual tradition is clearly very complex but on the basis of the MSS available at the moment further clarification is impossible. ${ }^{33}$

[^11]5. Survey and evaluation of the contents of Bk. 6 of the Zād almusăfir

Before starting our discussion of the contents of Bk. 6, it should be noted that this book consists of twenty chapters which, after a short introduction to the subject, deal with sexual diseases occurring to men (chs. 1-8), diseases affecting women (chs. 918), sciatica (ch. 19) and gout (ch. 20). Ibn al-Jazzar's major source is Galen. Like all Arabic physicians, he adopted Galen's humoral theory as the basis of his aetiology for several diseases (chs. 5-7, 9, 10, 12, 19, 20) and his therapeutical rule contraria contrariis curantur as the basis for the treatment of these diseases. Moreover, in some cases, as specified in the discussion of the contents of the chapters themselves, Ibn al-Jazzăr's symptology, way of treatment or other specific elements are very similar to those mentioned by Galen and seem to be derived from him.

Lastly, mention should be made of the fact that Galen is explicitly quoted not less than thirteen times. Another important source is Paul of Aegina (7th cent.), a Byzantine compiler, who enjoyed a great popularity in the Islamic world especially because of his gynaecological works, and was known to the Arabs as alqawābilī "the obstetrician". ${ }^{34}$ According to Ullmann, his discussion of gynaecology and obstetrics later served as a model for al-Majusi's treatment of the same subjects. ${ }^{35}$ In some cases (see chs. $912,13,19$ ) the similarity in certain elements is so close

[^12]that it seems that Ibn al-Jazzarr consulted this source in the form of an Arabic translation; Paul is also quoted explicitly. We shall see by means of some examples how a third important author whose fame rests mainly on his Gynecology, namely, Soranus (2nd cent.) had no influence on Ibn al-Jazzär whatsoever. The Arabs had only a slight knowledge of this physician, whose works were possibly never translated into Arabic. ${ }^{36}$

In the field of pharmacology Ibn al-Jazzăr often refers to Dioscurides (1st cent.) when advising a simple drug, while we find many references to other Arabic physicians when he prescribes compound medicines. It is especially in this area that Ibn al-Jazzarr and his colleagues surpassed the achievements of the ancients. ${ }^{37}$ The few magical prescriptions recommended by Ibn al-Jazzăr in chs. 16 and 18 are, as we shall see, most probably derived from al-Tabarı's Firdaws al-hikma (composed 850).

## Introduction

In the introduction to the first chapter, dealing with impotence and its treatment, Ibn al-Jazzär gives the following explanation for the creation of sexual power and lust in animals:

[^13]When the Creator, to Whom belong glory and greatness, wanted [to ensure] the survival of the species of animals, He created procreative organs for all of them, which he provided with an innate power, characteristic to them and creating delight. [By this] He evoked in the soul which has these organs at its disposal, the love and ardent desire to use them. He endowed the act of sexual intercourse with an unfailing and never absent sense of great pleasure, so that the species of animals would survive, and mankind would not hate sexual intercourse. For this would be the end of procreation.

Ibn al-Jazzar's source for this declaration is Galen, who remarks in his De usu partium: "To all animals Nature has given instruments for conception, and to the instruments themselves she has joined a remarkable faculty to produce pleasure, and to the soul that is to make use of them a marvellous, inexpressible longing to do so, which rouses and stings the animal so that it provides for the continuance of the race..." ${ }^{38}$

This statement by Galen is possibly an adaptation of Aristotle's remarks that sexual activity is natural and necessary for the reproduction of animals and the survival of the species, ${ }^{39}$ and that pleasure is caused by necessary things which are important for the body. ${ }^{40}$ The comparison with Galen also shows that Ibn al-Jazzarr, being a very pious Muslim, as the biographical sources inform us, does not speak about "Nature", but about "the Creator". The term "Nature" has been preserved, however, in a second Arabic medical compendium containing a similar introductory statement, namely, the Kāmil al-sinā'a al-ṭibbīya or $K$. al-Malaki, by the physician 'Alī ibn al-‘Abbās al-Majusı (10th

[^14]cent.). ${ }^{41}$ Besides these works this kind of explanation of sexual pleasure has been preserved in a different Arabic literary tradition, namely, that of the Pseudo-Aristotelian Problemata Physica. ${ }^{42}$

These introductory statements by Ibn al-Jazzār and al-Majosi are unique in Arabic medical literature. Other Arab physicians do not start their discussion of coitus with this kind of introduction but rather with an exposition of the anatomy of the penis, which they describe as ma'qad al-' $a s a b .{ }^{43}$ This term then returns in Latin tracts as cauda nervorum. ${ }^{44}$ Ibn al-Jazzăr's Zād al-musafir and al-Majusi's Kämil al-sinā'a were already in the 11th century translated into Latin by Constantine the African, and thus became the major source for Latin medieval tracts on reproduction, which always refer to the causal connection between pleasure and procreation. ${ }^{45}$

Ibn al-Jazzār closes his introduction by remarking that the sexual members, the spermaduct and the womb have been formed in the best possible way, and with utmost perfection. This statement is also derived from Galen's De usu partium,

[^15]which seeks to show that the structure of the human body fits its functions in an ideal way and that Nature has formed and arranged all the members of the body with utmost perfection. ${ }^{46}$

## Chapter 1

In this chapter entitled: "On the diseases occurring in the genitals" Ibn al-Jazzar discusses the subject of impotence and its treatment. This chapter is of major importance for the history of sexuality because it was one of the main sources for Latin medieval tracts treating the same subject. Moreover, it brings a lengthy quotation from a monograph on coitus ascribed to Polemon, showing the importance of the senses and psyche for arousing sexual lust. ${ }^{47}$

The major sources consulted by Ibn al-Jazzar for the composition of this chapter are 1. Galen's De usu partium. Ibn al-Jazzarr's description of the anatomy and physiology of the sexual organs is based on this work, which was one of the major sources for Arabic treatises on reproduction. ${ }^{48}$ 2. Galen's $D e$ semine. This work treats the origin of the sperm, its mode of operation and the part which both of the partners have in

[^16]conception. It was translated in the school of Hunayn ibn Ishăq, ${ }^{49}$ and was probably consulted by Ibn al-Jazzăr in this version.

Ibn al-Jazzăr starts his discussion of impotence with an explanation of the nature of an erection and remarks:

I say that the penis has been endowed with a natural, special function, which has not been acquired, but is there from the beginning, like the natural activities of the other organs. This can be seen in the fact that the moment that someone desires sexual intercourse or conjures it up in his imagination, a flatulence is stirred up and descends from the heart to the penis through connecting veins. Then it enters the hollow nerve of the penis, which consequently is blown up and stands erect. This completes the natural activity for which it was created.

Ibn al-Jazzăr refers to two different elements which may cause an erection, the first common to humans and animals, namely, the natural desire (someone desires sexual intercourse) and the second unique to humans, namely, imagination. The imagination which revives the former sexual pleasures imprinted in the memory plays an important role in Western Latin tracts on coitus. ${ }^{50}$ The idea of flatulence filling the penis and causing an erection is formulated by Galen in his De usu partium ${ }^{51}$ and De locis affectis, where he speaks of the air ( $\pi v \varepsilon \hat{\nu} \mu \alpha)$ or vaporous air ( $\dot{\alpha} \tau \mu \hat{\omega} \delta \varepsilon \varsigma \pi v \varepsilon \cup ิ \mu \alpha)$ which inflates and stiffens the penis. ${ }^{52}$ Besides flatulence Ibn al-Jazzār also speaks of the animal pneuma (al-rūh

[^17]al-hayawaniya) ${ }^{53}$ which fills the hollow nerve and thereby causes an erection. The animal pneuma, which originates in the heart, reaches the organs through the arteries and there maintains the animal faculties. This concept was developed in ancient medicine and dominated throughout the Middle Ages. Besides the animal pneuma, two other kinds of pneuma were distinguished, namely, the psychical, maintaining the psychical faculties, and the natural, supporting the function of the natural faculties. ${ }^{54}$ The ambivalent use of the terms flatulence and animal pneuma, which also occurs in Ibn Sinā, ${ }^{55}$ found its way, by means of the translations, into Latin medical literature. ${ }^{56}$ The anatomical description of the penis usually introduces Arabic treatises on coitus.

On the origin of the erection, sperm and lust Ibn al-Jazzār remarks: "The power of erection reaches the penis from the heart, for the heart sends the animal pneuma everywhere in the body. The sperm reaches [the penis] from the brain, while lust comes from the liver." The idea that the sperm originates from the brain (encephalogenesis) is one of the three theories which the ancient Greek philosophers developed on its origin. ${ }^{57}$ Amongst Arab physicians it is also espoused by al-Kind1 ${ }^{58}$ and al-Tabari. ${ }^{59}$ It is also attested in the newly published text from the hand of Maimonides on the regimen in sexual intercourse, entitled

[^18]Hanhagat ha-Beri'ut ba-Mishgal. ${ }^{60}$ According to the second theory the sperm originates from all parts of the body (pangenesis). This theory is stated in the Pseudo-Maimonidic treatise Ma'amar 'al Razei ha-Hayyim ha-Miniyyim. ${ }^{61}$ The third theory states that the sperm is nothing but a residue, ${ }^{62}$ which led to the medieval concept of sperm being nothing else than blood (haematogenesis), since both were residual products derived from food. ${ }^{63}$ It is attested in the K. al-dhakhira traditionally ascribed to Thabbit ibn Qurra. ${ }^{64}$ Ibn al-Jazzăr's notion that lust originates from the liver is widespread in Arabic medical literature and is attested in al-Tabari, ${ }^{65}$ al-Kindi ${ }^{66}$ and Ibn Sinā. 67

Ibn al-Jazzār introduces his discussion of the function of the testicles by declaring that they emit a power to the whole body which causes males to be masculine and females to be feminine. Implicit in this statement is the idea, already stated by Galen ${ }^{68}$ and current throughout the Middle Ages, that women also had testicles, though smaller in size and less perfect than those of men, namely, the ovaries. Vesalius still described these as testes muliebres. ${ }^{69}$

[^19]Ibn al-Jazzăr now remarks on their function that they are the source of heat and strength for the rest of the body, and that therefore someone who is castrated cannot grow a beard; his body is hairless, while his veins are like those of a woman; he does not desire sexual intercourse, nor does his soul. This statement is very similar to a passage in Galen's De semine as the following comparison will show:

Ibn al-Jazzār
Wa-yataharraku minhá ila jamī'i l-badani haräratun kathirratun wa-li-dhalika şara man yukhṣa la tanbutu lahu lihyatun wayакӣnи та'a hadhā badanuhu 'adimata l-sha'ri wa-takanu 'urūquhu 'ala mithali 'urūqi $l$ nisä'i wa-la yashtahíl-bāha wala tatashawwaqu nafsuhu ilayhi.

Much heat moves from the testicles to all of the body, therefore someone who is castrated cannot grow a beard; his body is hairless, while his veins are like those of a woman. He does not desire sexual intercourse, nor does his soul.

Galen


 $\tau \grave{\alpha} \gamma \dot{\varepsilon} v \varepsilon \imath \alpha$ fóvov, $\dot{\alpha} \lambda \lambda \dot{\alpha}$ к $\alpha i ̀ ~ \tau o ̀ ~$ $\sigma v ́ \mu \pi \alpha v$ रívov $\tau \alpha \iota \sigma \omega \bar{\omega} \alpha, \mu \iota \kappa \rho \alpha ̀ \varsigma ~ \delta '$,




...and they also pour forth a large amount of heat to the whole body, and for that reason those who have lost them are without hair not only on their chins but over all their body. They have small veins, as was said, like women, and they have no sexual desire, as though they were something other than an animal. ${ }^{71}$

A similar idea is implicated in a passage in the Arabic PseudoAristotelian Problemata Physica stating that the hair of the head and eyelashes, present at birth and originating from natural heat, is reduced by much sexual intercourse. But the hair of the beard

[^20]and of the rest of the body, absent at birth and originating from the accidental heat of the body, increases by much sexual intercourse. ${ }^{72}$ Ibn al-Jazzãr's familiarity with the Problemata Physica appears clearly from the following explicit quotation: "Aristotle the philosopher said that well-haired human beings and thickly feathered birds have much sexual intercourse. This is because much hair and many feathers only originate from excessive warmth and from much moisture." ${ }^{73}$

Referring to Galen, Ibn al-Jazzar remarks that the testicles, which provide the body with warmth and strength and greatly transform the sperm which collects in them, rank among the principal organs. ${ }^{74}$ In his De semine ${ }^{75}$ Galen stresses the active role of the testicles in the formation of the sperm, while criticising Aristotle, for whom sperm was nothing but a residual product and the testicles mere receptacles. ${ }^{76}$ Galen, however, ascribed a specific function to them. Although the raw material of the sperm was provided by the blood at a definite stage in its coction, this blood underwent a transformation, shown above all by a progressive dealbation, in the circumvolutions formed by the spermatic veins and arteries, thus turning into semen on arrival in

[^21]the testicles. ${ }^{77}$ The notion that the testicles rank among the principal members also figures in al-Tabari's Firdaws alhikma, ${ }^{78}$ and in Ibn Siñā's K. al-qānūn. ${ }^{79}$

On the proper conditions for sexual intercourse, Ibn al-Jazzär remarks:


#### Abstract

The power for sexual intercourse will only be at its best, when the temperament of the testicles is warm and moist, in a balanced measure or close to a balance, for warmth increases lust, while moisture increases sperm. If, however, the temperament of the testicles is changed very much, the power for sexual intercourse will not be proper and balanced.


The concepts of the temperament and balance of the four humours in the human body - namely, blood, phlegm, yellow bile, and black bile, and their qualities warm, moist, dry and cold - played a central role in Galen's humoral pathology. According to Galen health depends on the balance of the humours, while illness results when this balance is disturbed. This theory was adopted by all Arab physicians and dominated throughout the Middle Ages. ${ }^{80}$ The same holds good for the testicles: When their temperament is proper, namely, warm and moist, there is a healthy sexual vigour, but when it is disturbed, sexual vigour decreases.

Ibn al-Jazzār concludes this section with a description of the symptoms of the temperament of the testicles which is

[^22]unbalanced, because of the domination of warmth and dryness, cold and dryness, and cold and moisture:


#### Abstract

If, for instance, warmth and dryness dominate the temperament of someone's testicles, this man will only have meagre sperm, because of the dryness, while his lust for sexual intercourse will [still] be strong because of the warmth and will pass quickly. In case he masturbates, this will cause him harm. If cold and dryness dominate someone's testicles, he will not desire sexual intercourse because of the cold, while he will only have meagre sperm because of the dryness. If, however, cold and moisture dominate his testicles, he will have little desire for sexual intercourse because of the cold, while he will have much sperm because of the moisture.


Galen describes the different temperaments of the testicles and their symptoms in his De arte medica. ${ }^{81}$ Qusṭa ibn Luqqa describes many other symptoms, besides those mentioned by Ibn al-Jazzăr. In case of warmth and dryness, for instance: early puberty, thick sperm, thick pubic hair, many children, mostly boys; in case of cold and dryness: late puberty, thin pubic hair, not many children, mostly girls; and in case of cold and moisture: very late puberty (above the age of twenty), thin pubic hair, not many children, mostly girls; thin, watery sperm. ${ }^{82}$

In accordance with his previous statements that flatulence is necessary for an erection and warmth and moisture for a proper sexual vigour, Ibn al-Jazzār remarks that those kinds of foodstuff or remedies which contain these three properties, namely, flatulence, warmth and moisture, are the best for the production

[^23]of the sperm and the increase of the sexual vigour. ${ }^{83}$ In case a certain kind of foodstuff misses one or more of those properties, one should combine it with another kind of foodstuff which does have the missing properties. Exactly the same recommendation is made by Hunayn in the fragments of his monograph on coitus preserved by al-Razzi. ${ }^{84}$

The last part of the chapter is devoted to aphrodisiacs. Different kinds of food, ingredients, simple and compound remedies which increase the sperm, strengthen one's potency and increase one's lust are recommended. Most of the means mentioned feature in all the treatises dealing with impotence, from the ancient Greek physicians until the Arab medical authors referred to above. We shall therefore only give some typical examples. Recommended are, for instance, chickpeas, ${ }^{85}$ which contain all the three necessary properties mentioned before, since they are warm, moist, and flatulent. It is therefore not necessary to mix them with something else. Beans are very good for producing sperm, but lack the property of warmth. So one should add to them warm ingredients, like long pepper, ginger, galingale. Much sperm is produced by different kinds of fresh meat and of brains, yolk of eggs, figs, pine nuts, and peppercorns.

[^24]If someone suffers from impotence because his temperament is hot and dry, he should not take hot products, since they do not engender sperm but dry it and dissolve the flatulence.

Next to the aphrodisiacs other means are recommended, namely, different kinds of enemas, and rubbing of the penis and testicles with different kinds of oil, such as oil of gillyflower, nard, or costus.

The chapter closes with a remark similar to those of al-Kindi and al-Tabarı, testifying to the author's awareness of the influence of psychological factors on sexual lust: "We have found other means as well which, when applied together with the remedies and regimen mentioned by us above, strengthen the sexual lust and [sexual] activity, such as to relieve the heart of anxiety and to be always joyful." Ibn al-Jazzăr confirms this statement by quoting Polemon:

> This conforms with the statement of Polemon, author of the Firäsa, for he said that there are various incentives which excite sexual lust, each of these both seeking to arouse it and, [once it is aroused], serving to increase it. These include affectionate words, showing passion, kissing the cheeks, fondling with the hand, 86 licking with the tongue, joy over the sight of the beloved, expressing one's devotion to the beloved and refraining from dwelling on grievances [against her].

Polemon is the author of a work on physiognomy (firāsa) which only survives in Arabic and Latin translations. ${ }^{87}$ The citation by Ibn al-Jazzār does not feature in these translations, but is most probably part of the monograph on coitus ascribed to him and

[^25]referred to above. In Arabic sources Polemon was sometimes mistaken for the physician Philomenos (2nd. cent. A.D.), since both authors were indicated with the same name "Iflimon." No wonder then that Constantine the African translated this name as "Filumenus" in his Liber de coitu. ${ }^{88}$

## Chapter 2

In this chapter Ibn al-Jazzăr discusses the affliction called "priapism." His definition of this affliction as a state wherein the penis becomes long and swollen and stays like that for awhile, but while one has no lust for coitus is similar to that of Galen and of the Byzantine compilators. ${ }^{89}$ The causes of this affliction, namely, a thick flatulent wind or a viscous moisture with balanced heat are again already referred to by Galen and the Byzantine compilers. ${ }^{90}$

The treatment of this affliction is introduced by a reference to Galen's statement that the remedies which stimulate [the lust] for coitus are harmful to it. I could not find the source for this reference, but Ibn al-Jazzăr may have inferred it from Galen's statement that those remedies and foodstuff should be applied which have an attenuating force, and do not have a warming

[^26]property. ${ }^{91}$ Or from Galen's remark: "Medicine which increases the tension in the penis...is always hot and causes flatulence, whereas opposite drugs do not develop gas and are cooling rather than warming."92

According to the generally accepted principle of contraria contrariis curantur, Ibn al-Jazzăr recommends to treat this affliction with cold remedies with little flatulence. One of the remedies recommended is chaste-tree, on which, according to a quotation from Galen, the women of Athens used to sleep during their high festivals so that the lust for coitus would leave them. ${ }^{93}$ The moderating effect of this plant is, according to Ibn al-Jazzăr, reflected in popular lore as well, since the Syrians use to refer to it "with a word derived from the word for chastity." Ibn al-Jazzär probably has in mind that in Syriac this plant was also called ìlanā qaddīshā, deriving ö $\gamma v o \varsigma$ (chaste-tree) from $\dot{\alpha} \gamma v o ́ \varsigma ~(c h a s t e), ~$ as the ancient Greeks already did. ${ }^{94} \mathrm{Ibn}$ al-Jazzār concludes this chapter with a warning against the use of hot foodstuff and drinks.

[^27]
## Chapter 3

In this chapter Ibn al-Jazzār discusses the affliction of a constant involuntary flow of sperm, which was called "gonorrhea" in ancient medical literature. ${ }^{95} \mathrm{He}$ states that this disease can be caused either by a weakness of the retentive power in the seminal vesicles, in which case there is no erection, or by an affliction occurring in them, comparable to a spasm, in which case there is an erection. The same causes are referred to by Galen. ${ }^{96}$

This disease can, as he states, also occur when there is a surplus of sperm and when it is hot and sharp or thin and watery. In these cases mere amorous toying is enough for its ejaculation. ${ }^{97}$ A similar statement is made by Alexander of Tralles; he does, however, not mention its ejaculation by amorous toying. 98

The treatment of this disease consists of different advises on the regimen of the patient, such as to take cold foodstuff and frequent cold baths, to avoid hot foodstuff and hot drinks, and to lie down on a bed covered with cold remedies. Next to it, Ibn al-

[^28]Jazzăr recommends some compound cold remedies, and different kinds of oils to be rubbed on the penis and loins.

## Chapter 4

As in many Western medieval treatises on sexual diseases, possibly following the model of the Zād al-musäfir, the chapter on "gonorrhea" is followed by that on "nocturnal emissions" (ihtilām). ${ }^{99}$

Ibn al-Jazzarr distinguishes between the following causes of a nocturnal emission: 1. a surplus of sperm, as in the case of young adults; 2 . a feeling of closeness during one's sleep with the object of desire of one's soul; 3 . imaginary sexual intercourse during one's sleep with a woman one has seen and is longing for.

About the conditions necessary for a nocturnal emission, Ibn al-Jazzarr states that it only occurs in the case of a long, deep and quiet sleep, but not in the case of a troubled sleep. The treatment of this affliction should be the same, according to Ibn al-Jazzarr, as the treatment of priapism, namely, to administer cold foodstuff, to rub the thighs and penis with cooling remedies, to

[^29]anoint the penis with camphor and oil of roses, and to sleep on a cold bed on one's side.

## Chapter 5

In this chapter Ibn al-Jazzãr discusses the occurrence of ulcers and tumours on the penis, as well as their treatment. In accordance with the generally accepted humoral theory, he states that these afflictions are caused by superfluous humours streaming to the penis from all parts of the body.

His prescription for the treatment of an ulcer occurring without a tumour is similar to that of Galen as the following table may show:

Ibn al-Jazzār
Fa-in ra'ayna fi l-qadībi qurāhan min ghayri waramin 'ālajnahu bi-hādhàldawa'i wa-hadhihi sifatuhu:
 muharraqi...

If we see on the penis an ulcer without a tumour, we treat it with a remedy with the following composition: Take burned papyrus...

Galen
$\tau \dot{\alpha} \delta^{\prime} \dot{\varepsilon} v \alpha i \delta o i o r \varsigma ~ \varepsilon ̌ \lambda \kappa \eta ~ . . . ~ \chi \omega \rho i \varsigma ~$
 ठєîт $\alpha ı ~ \varphi \alpha \rho \mu \alpha ́ \kappa \omega v$, oï $\alpha$ ह̀ $\sigma \tau ı ~ \tau o ́ ~ \tau \varepsilon ~$ Ulcers on the pudenda...without an inflammation, should be altogether treated with drying remedies, such as burned papyrus...

Ibn al-Jazzăr's prescription for a very moist ulcer is again similar to that of Galen, as our table shows clearly:

[^30]Ibn al-Jazzār

 sanawbari l-muharraqi wa-shädhanaj. $\alpha i \mu \alpha \tau i ́ \tau \eta .{ }^{101}$

If the ulcer is very moist, we treat it with the burned rind of the pine nut and haematite.

Galen
but if the ulcers happen to be very moist, we treat everyone of them with the rind of the pine nut and with the haematite stone.

Ibn al-Jazzār concludes this chapter by recommending some compound remedies for a tumour and pustule on the penis, and by quoting Galen for the prescription of a plaster for a tumour and swelling on the penis.

## Chapter 6

In this chapter Ibn al-Jazzar deals with the occurrence of tumours on the testicles and their treatment. ${ }^{102}$ His aetiology is, as usual, based on the doctrine of the humours. Accordingly, hot or cold superfluous matter reaching the testicles causes hot or cold tumours.

His treatment of hot tumours consists first of all of bleeding; then he prescribes different kinds of plasters to be put on them. Some prescriptions are similar to those prescribed by Galen. ${ }^{103}$

[^31]For one prescription he quotes his teacher Isḥāq b. Sulaymān alIsra'ili. For the treatment of cold tumours Ibn al-Jazzar recommends different kinds of dressings and plasters.

## Chapter 7

In this chapter Ibn al-Jazzăr discusses the treatment of different afflictions occurring to the testicles, such as vesicatory ulcers, itchings, open sores, and fissures. ${ }^{104}$ His recommendation to treat a vesicatory ulcer with a plaster of Cimolian earth pounded with water, to leave the plaster for a while and then to wash it, is similar to that of Galen and the Byzantine compilers Oribasius and Paul of Aegina. ${ }^{105}$ His prescription of a plaster for itching consisting of six dirhams of ceruse, two dirhams of yellow sulphur, and one dirham of opium, pounded with wine or with vinegar, is possibly derived from al-Tabari's Firdaws alhikma. ${ }^{106}$ The remedy which Ibn al-Jazzār recommends for an open sore on the testicles caused by sweat, namely, pounded alum and gallnuts, is prescribed by Galen and Paul of Aegina for an ulcer on the scrotum. ${ }^{107}$

[^32]Chapter 8

The subject of this chapter is ruptures and scrotal hernia occurring in the testicles. Ibn al-Jazzăr enumerates several possible causes of these ruptures, such as strenuous activity, a loud cry, a violent cough, a fight, and sexual intercourse with a full stomach. Their healing is very difficult, only small ruptures can be healed by means of cauterisation, especially in the case of young boys.

As a treatment for ruptures in the case of adult men, Ibn alJazzār prescribes a fitting regimen, consisting of rest, a special diet and continence, and different means which prevent the rupture from enlarging. But when this does happen the treatment becomes very difficult. Drugs which soften the stomach and dissolve winds are recommended, as well as plasters with an astringent, contracting power. An example of such a plaster is the one prescribed by Sabar [b. Sahl]. ${ }^{108}$

In the last part of this chapter the author recommends different plasters for scrotal hernia, one derived from Dioscurides, and another from his own experience.

[^33]
## Chapter 9

Ibn al-Jazzăr now starts his treatment of women's diseases by discussing the retention of the menstrual blood (amenorrhea). The introduction to this chapter discussing the beginning and end of the menstruation, is very similar to that of Paul of Aegina:

Paul of Aegina

Wa-l-ṭamthu ya'tí l-nisā’a 'inda T $\alpha i ̂ \varsigma ~ \pi \lambda \varepsilon ́ เ \sigma \tau \alpha ı \varsigma ~ \dot{\eta} \kappa \alpha \dot{\alpha} \theta \rho \sigma \iota \varsigma$ bulughihinna ilā arba'ata 'ashrata $\gamma^{\prime} \vee \varepsilon \tau \alpha \downarrow$ $\pi \varepsilon \rho \grave{̀} \tau \varepsilon \sigma \sigma \varepsilon \rho \varepsilon \sigma \kappa \alpha_{1}-$
 sanatan..fa-ammā ihtibāsu l-tamthi fa- $\theta \hat{\alpha} \sigma \sigma \sigma v, \kappa \alpha \tau \dot{\alpha}$ тò $\tau \rho \iota \sigma \kappa \alpha_{1-}$
 wa-immä bi-l-'aradi. Fa-lladhī yakūnu ò $\lambda i ́ \gamma \alpha \iota s ~ \delta \grave{\varepsilon} \beta \rho \alpha ́ \delta ı v ~ \tau \omega ิ v$ bi-l-ṭab'i fa-mithla lladhī yakūnu 'inda bulaghi l-mar'ati min al-sinni khamsina sanatan, wa-yakūnu min ba'dihinna 'inda bulüghi khamsa wa-thalathina sanatan wa-la siyyama man khamalat min hunna l-lahmu wa-kathara shahmuha.

Women [usually] begin to menstruate when they become fourteen years old, or at the earliest at the age of twelve. ...The retention of the menstrual blood occurs in two ways, namely, natural and accidental. It is natural when a woman becomes 50 years old, in the case of some women when they become 60 years, and others 35 years, especially with someone whose flesh has become soft and very fat.
$\delta \varepsilon \kappa \alpha \tau \varepsilon \sigma \sigma \alpha \rho \omega v \quad \dot{\varepsilon} \tau \hat{\omega} v \quad .$. $\pi \alpha v ́ o v \tau \alpha \iota ~ \delta \grave{\varepsilon} \tau \hat{\omega} v \kappa \alpha \theta \alpha ́ \rho \sigma \varepsilon \omega v$ $\alpha i \quad \mu \varepsilon ̀ v \pi \varepsilon \rho i$ tò $\pi \varepsilon v \tau \eta \kappa о \sigma \tau o ̀ v$ غ̌тоऽ, $\sigma \pi \alpha ́ v \iota \alpha \iota ~ \delta غ ̀ ~ \mu \varepsilon ́ \chi \rho ı ~ \tau \hat{\varepsilon} v$ $\dot{\varepsilon} \xi \dot{\eta} \kappa о \nu \tau \alpha$, $\dot{\varepsilon} v i ́ \alpha ı \varsigma ~ \delta \dot{\varepsilon} \alpha \dot{\alpha}$ ò $\pi \varepsilon ́ v \tau \varepsilon$
 $\tau \alpha i ̂ \varsigma ~ \kappa \alpha \tau \alpha \pi \iota \mu \dot{\varepsilon} \lambda \alpha / \varsigma{ }^{109}$

With most women the menstrual discharge begins about the fourteenth year of their age; a few have it earlier, in their thirteenth or twelfth; and not a few are later than their fourteenth in having it...The menses cease about the fiftieth year of age, a few have them till sixty, and with some they begin to disappear about thirty-five, particularly with such as are fat. ${ }^{110}$

[^34]It is clear that this statement by Ibn al-Jazzăr is an adaptation by means of the Galenic categories "natural" and "accidental" of that made by Paul of Aegina. This kind of introduction to women's diseases shows that according to Ibn al-Jazzär menstruation plays a central role both in maintaining women's health and in causing women's diseases; he therefore discusses this topic first of all. ${ }^{111}$ Menstruation is, according to Ibn al-Jazzar, caused by the fact that the bodies of women are cold and moist, and contain much moisture. This theory, which supposes that women, because of a lack of natural heat to burn the bodily superfluities, expel them by means of menstruation, was developed by Galen following Aristotle. Because of this lack of natural heat, women are, according to Galen, less perfect than men. ${ }^{112}$

This notion of the biological inferiority of women became very prominent in medieval medical literature, and was sometimes combined with data on their psychological and ethical inferiority. ${ }^{113}$ According to Soranus, however, women do not have a special physiology based on the notion that their constitution is moister and colder. ${ }^{114}$

[^35]Ibn al-Jazzār's aetiology of amenorrhea is highly formalised according to the categories of Galenic humoralism, as he distinguishes between the following causes of accidental retention: 1. a faculty, namely, the domination of a natural or accidental bad temperament; 2. an organ, namely, a natural or accidental affliction of the substance of the uterus or its veins 3. matter (menstrual blood), namely, its quantity (too meagre), quality (thick, viscous), and movement (streaming in the wrong direction). This schematisation is very similar to that employed by al-Majusi in his chapter on the same subject. ${ }^{115}$

A different kind of cause for amenorrhea referred to by Ibn alJazzār, is continuous sorrow, anxiety, or similar psychical afflictions, such as anger or fear. ${ }^{116}$ By contrast Soranus' description of the possible causes of amenorrhea is totally different, since it is not schematised. He mentions a disease of the uterus, such as callosity, scirrhus, or inflammation, or a disease of the rest of the body, such as undernourishment, great emaciation and wasting. 117

The first series of symptoms of amenorrhea enumerated by Ibn al-Jazzăr, namely, lack of appetite, nausea, and a craving for bad foodstuffs such as charcoal and earth, is already referred to

[^36]by Galen. ${ }^{118}$ These symptoms often occurring in pregnant women, are discussed more extensively in ch. 15 , dealing with the regimen of pregnant women. The second series of symptoms of amenorrhea is very similar to that of Galen as this comparative table shows clearly:

Ibn al-Jazzar
wa-qad ya'rudu min dhälika a'rādun ghaira mā wasafnā mithla waj'i l-sulbi wa-lraqabati wa-l-ra'si wa-l- 'aynayni wa-qad ya'rudu lahunna hummayatun lahibatun watakūnu abwăluhunna ila alsawādi wa-ilā al-humrati warubbamā kāna yushbihu mā'a lahmin tari'in.

But it can also cause other afflictions, apart from those which we have described, as, for instance, pain in the loins, neck, head and eyes, or burning fevers. The colour of such women's urine will tend towards black and red, and sometimes it will look like the juice of fresh meat.

Galen
 $\sigma v \mu \pi \tau \dot{\omega} \mu \alpha \tau \alpha$ $\tau \alpha \hat{\varsigma} \varsigma ~ \tau \hat{\omega} \nu$ к $\alpha \tau \alpha-$ $\mu \eta \vee i ́ \omega \nu$ غ̇ $\pi \imath \sigma \chi \dot{\varepsilon} \sigma \varepsilon \sigma \iota$, к $\alpha i ̀ \chi \omega \rho i \varsigma$ $\tau \circ v \dot{\tau} \omega \nu \dot{\alpha} \lambda \gamma \gamma^{\prime} \mu \alpha \tau \alpha \kappa \alpha \tau$ ó ó $\varphi \hat{v} v \kappa \alpha i ̀$ $\tau \rho \alpha ́ \chi \eta \lambda o v ~ \kappa \alpha i ̉ \beta \rho \varepsilon ́ \gamma \mu \alpha \kappa \alpha i ̀ \tau \grave{\alpha} \tau \omega ิ$ ó $\varphi \theta \alpha \lambda \mu \hat{\omega} v$ ß $\alpha \sigma \varepsilon \iota \varsigma, \pi \nu \rho \tau о$ í $\tau \varepsilon$ $\kappa \alpha v \sigma \hat{\omega} \delta \varepsilon \iota \varsigma$ к $\alpha i ̀$ ои̉ $\rho \alpha \mu \varepsilon \lambda \alpha ı v o ́ \mu \varepsilon v \alpha$

 $\dot{\alpha} \sigma \beta o ́ \lambda \eta \nu .{ }^{119}$

Such are the symptoms which develop from suppression of the menses. Beside these we find pain in the lumbar area, the neck, the forehead, and behind the eyes; we also find a burning fever and a rather dark urine with some reddish serum, similar to a mixture of soot with water in which freshly slaughtered meat has been washed. ${ }^{120}$

Because of this close similarity I have compared Ibn al-Jazzăr's terminology with the Arabic translation of Galen's De locis affectis, prepared by Hubaysh and revised by Hunayn, in order

[^37]to see if Ibn al-Jazzăr consulted this particular source. ${ }^{121}$ I conclude that Ibn al-Jazzār did not use this translation, since the terminology employed by him is totally different from that used by Hubaysh/Ḥunayn:

## Ibn al-Jazzār

wa-qad ya'rudu min dhālika a'radun ghaira mā waṣafnā mithla waj'i l-sulbi wa-l-raqabati wa-lra'si wa-l-'aynayni wa-qad ya'rudu lahunna hummāyātun lahibatun wa-takünu abwãlu-hunna ilà alsawādi wa-ilā al-humrati warubbamā kāna yushbihu mā'a lahmin tari'in

## Hubaysh/Ḥunayn

wa-qad yatba'uhu aydan a'rādun ghaira hādhihi wa-hiya waj'un fi lqaṭani wa-fi l-‘unuqi wa-fi yafūkhi al-ra'si wa-fì aṣli l-ayni wahummayãtun muharriratun wabawlun yastawaddu ma'a shay'in min ḥadĩdin ậmara bi-manzilati mā'in law annaka khalatta bighusālati lahmin ṭari'in

The first treatment recommended by Ibn al-Jazzār consists of venesection of the saphenous vein in the foot or of applying cupping glasses to the ankle bones. This kind of venesection was recommended by Galen in his De venae sectione. ${ }^{122}$ This treatment is exemplified by a quotation from Galen's commentary on Hippocrates' Epidemics, stating that he had cured a woman who had suffered from amenorrhea for eight months and had become emaciated, by means of bleeding her during three consecutive days. ${ }^{123}$

Next Ibn al-Jazzăr prescribes, just like al-Majusí, all kinds of remedies, such as drugs, pills, decoctions, suppositories,

[^38]compresses, and suffumigations. ${ }^{124}$ For some of these prescriptions he consults and quotes from the works of other Arabic physicians. He recommends, for instance, a powder composed by Isḥaq ibn 'Imran (9th-10th cent.).

Chapter 10

In this chapter Ibn al-Jazzār discusses an excessive loss of blood occurring to women (hypermenorrhea). Just as in the previous chapter his discussion of its aetiology is highly schematised, using once again Galenic categories. According to the humoral theory, one of the major causes of hypermenorrhea is the bad quality of the blood assuming different colours, when it is sharp, bitter or mucous.

The symptoms enumerated by Ibn al-Jazzār bear a close resemblance to those mentioned by Galen:

Ibn al-Jazzar
Fa-in kathura nazfu l-dami wa-afraṭa 'arada li-l-mar'ati radatu l-lawni wawaramu l-rijlayni wa-lā yandaju ța'àmuhā illă nadjan ḍa'iffan wa-lă tashtahíl-ṭa'ãma wa-yadhbulu badanuhā wa-ya 'rudu lahā istisqa'.

Galen
$\tau \alpha i ̄ \varsigma ~ \delta ’ ~ \alpha \mu \varepsilon ́ \tau \rho о \imath \varsigma ~ к \varepsilon v \omega ́ \sigma \varepsilon \sigma ı v$ ดै $\chi \rho 01 \alpha 1$ к $\alpha i ̀ \pi o \delta \hat{\omega} v$ oí $\bar{\eta} \mu \alpha \tau \alpha$
 $\mu \circ \chi \theta \eta \rho \omega ิ \varsigma \pi \varepsilon ́ \tau \tau \varepsilon \iota \nu \tau \grave{\alpha} \sigma \iota \tau i ́ \alpha$ к $\alpha \grave{i}$ $\varphi \alpha v ́ \lambda \omega \varsigma$ ó $\rho \varepsilon ́ \gamma \varepsilon \sigma \theta \alpha 1 .{ }^{125}$

[^39]If a woman loses much menstrual blood, her colour will be bad, her feet will be swollen, her food will only be slightly digested, she will not have an appetite, her body will be withered, and dropsy will befall her.

Others who have an excessive flow become pale, develop oedema of the legs and a swelling of the entire body, digest their food with difficulty, and have a poor appetite. ${ }^{126}$

When this affliction is caused by a surplus of blood, Ibn al-Jazzär recommends first of all to apply venesection to the upper parts of the body, so that the blood will be drawn upwards. When the cause is superfluous phlegm or bile, purgatives should be used in order to extract it. If the loss of blood continues after this, the patient should take astringent and thickening drugs. If this does not help, she should put cupping glasses under each breast to draw the blood upwards.

As Monica Green has already remarked, this therapy supposes the existence of a connection between the uterus and the breasts. This notion goes back to the Hippocratic Corpus and was commented upon by Galen. ${ }^{127}$ Ibn al-Jazzāar concludes this chapter by prescribing a variety of decoctions, electuaries, pills, pessaries, suppositories, and powders.

## Chapter 11

The central subject of chapter 11 is the disease called "hysterical suffocation". Though a definition of this disease is hard to give,

[^40]because every culture had its own particular conception of it, the general notion originating with Hippocrates' On women's diseases was that it was a displacement of the womb, whereby it came into sympathy with the upper parts of the body, causing suffocation and sensory disturbances. 128

It should be noted that Galen's opinion on the nature of this affliction is inconsistent. As an anatomist he rejected the idea of a "wandering uterus" since it was well attached by "fibrous and thin connections" to other organs surrounding it, ${ }^{129}$ but as a therapist he remarked: "When the uterus rises or experiences deviations, we apply [cupping glasses] to the groin and the thighs. We also place extremely fetid odours near the nose and extremely pleasant ones near the uterus." ${ }^{130}$ In the course of the Middle Ages this idea, already rejected by Yuḥannā ibn Sarābiyan (9th cent.) was challenged by ever more physicians. ${ }^{131}$

Ibn al-Jazzār starts his discussion of this affliction with an enumeration of its symptoms, namely, lack of appetite, cold, fainting, small and weak pulse, and sometimes convulsive contractions. Galen mentions similar symptoms, and some

[^41]others, such as difficulty of breathing, loss of voice, a complete loss of responsiveness and lack of motion. ${ }^{132}$ Quoting Galen, Ibn al-Jazzār writes that sometimes the pulse can be so small that one thinks that the patient is dead. Only by bringing a piece of teased wool to her nose does one discover that she is still alive. ${ }^{133}$

Ibn al-Jazzãr attributes this affliction not to a wandering uterus, but to a surplus and corruption of a woman's sperm when she is withheld from sexual intercourse. For in that case vapours originating from the corrupting matter in the womb rise to the head. Another cause mentioned by him is the retention of the menstrual blood. Galen refers to the retention of the menses and of the semen as possible causes in his De locis affectis, where he rejects, as we have seen, the idea that hysterical suffocation could have been caused by a displacement of the womb. ${ }^{134} \mathrm{He}$ does not refer, however, to vapours rising from the corrupted matter to the head.

The concept that women have sperm, just like men, was already adhered to by Hippocrates, who also stated that both the female and the male sperm were necessary for the formation of the embryo. This theory was adopted and modified by Galen, and thus became dominant until the middle of the 13th century, when Aristotle's works, in which he emphatically denied the

[^42]existence of female seed, were translated and disseminated in the West. ${ }^{135}$

Ibn al-Jazzār states that two categories of women are especially liable to this affliction, namely, widows and virgins. This idea became popular in medieval Western Europe through the Latin translation of the Zād al-musäfir and through its adoption by two other works as well, namely, Moschion's Gynaecia, and the De Mulierum Affectibus. ${ }^{136}$ It originated in the Hippocratic Corpus, where it is stated that this disease occurs mostly in women who do not have sexual contacts, and in elderly rather than in young women. ${ }^{137}$ Galen claimed that it was generally agreed that it affects mostly widows. 138

All kinds of treatment are recommended for this affliction by Ibn al-Jazzar, such as massage, the sniffing of ingredients with a disagreeable smell, sternutatories, fumigations, cupping-glasses, suffumigations, and fragrant drugs. The sniffing of ingredients with an evil smell was prescribed by the physicians from Hippocrates on, in the belief that the uterus fled from it, while fragrant substances and suppositories were applied from below in the belief that the uterus was attracted by them. In this way they thought that the uterus might move back to its place.

This kind of therapy was, as we saw, also recommended by Galen as a devoted adherent of Hippocrates in his De methodo medendi ad Glauconem, although elsewhere he denied the possibility that the uterus might move through the body, in which

[^43]context this therapy would not make any sense. ${ }^{139}$ This therapy presupposes the existence of a direct channel between vagina, uterus, and mouth (or nose). This concept already occurs in the Hippocratic Corpus and is confirmed by Galen. ${ }^{140} \mathrm{Ibn}$ al-Jazzar, a true devotee of Galen, retained his inconsistency in his discussion of this affliction without any comment whatsoever. The only physician who, as far as we know, voiced strong opposition to this therapy was Soranus (2nd cent.). He remarked mockingly: "We, however, censure all these men who start by hurting the inflamed parts and cause torpor by the effluvia of illsmelling substances. For the uterus does not issue forth like a wild animal from its lair, delighted by fragrant odours and fleeing bad odours; rather it is drawn together because of the stricture caused by the inflammation." ${ }^{141}$

A therapy one would obviously have expected to be recommended by Ibn al-Jazzăr in the first place, namely, sexual intercourse, is not referred to by him at all, although his colleague al-Majasi recommended it explicitly when he remarks: "When the patient is still a virgin, she should marry; and when she did not have sexual intercourse for a long time, she should have it; because this evacuates the seed retained in the vessels and opens

[^44]the obstructions caused thereby, so that the disease will disappear, God willing." ${ }^{142}$

This therapy had already been recommended by the author of the Hippocratic treatise On Women's Diseases, who remarked that for a widow the best thing to do is to become pregnant, and for a virgin to marry. ${ }^{143}$ It is possible that Ibn al-Jazzār's silence on this particular point is not motivated by strict morals, but goes back to the fact that his greatest source of inspiration, namely, Galen, not only does not make this kind of recommendation, but, as we saw, even reduces the two categories of women to one, namely, widows.

For a part of this treatment, namely the rubbing of the orifice with fragrant oils, Ibn al-Jazzăr stipulates specifically that it should be carried out by the midwife. We find the same stipulation in the next chapter, which discusses palpation of the orifice of the uterus. In ch. 13 Ibn al-Jazzăr remarks about the treatment of ulcers in the uterus, that the patient should pour into her vagina those drugs which clean the ulcers, alleviate their throbbing pain and extinguish their sharpness.

These statements touch upon the problem of the examination and treatment of the patient in the case of women's diseases in medieval Islamic society. Ibn Khaldan (14th cent.) states as a

[^45]general rule that the craft of midwifery is restricted to midwives only "since they, as women, may see the pudenda of other women." ${ }^{144} \mathrm{Al}$-Suyaṭi (15th cent.) refers to the opinion of Ahmad ibn Hanbal (9th cent.), founder of one of the four major Sunnì schools, the Hanbali, that a physician may look at "the forbidden parts" of a woman's body if his intervention is absolutely necessary. ${ }^{145}$

The extant medical sources do not give us a uniform picture, but the prevailing idea is that the physician should only then take an active part in the treatment of women's diseases, when it is impossible for the midwife alone to do so, as, for instance, in the case of certain operations. Sometimes one can distinguish a tendency towards leniency in the external treatment of the patient, in which case the physician was allowed to perform certain kinds of treatment, contrary to the internal treatment. ${ }^{146}$

This generally passive role of the physician most probably explains why the Arabs did not perform well in the field of women's diseases, but only handed down the ancient traditions. A notable exception to this rule is al-Zahrāwī (10th cent.), who made two new designs for vaginal specula and invented different procedures for extracting dead foetuses. ${ }^{147}$

144 Ibn Khaldan, Muqaddimah, transl. Rosenthal II, 368.
145 See Weisser, op. cit., 57.
146 For a more extensive, but tentative discussion see Ullmann, op. cit., 250-1; Diepgen, op. cit., 32; Weisser, op. cit., 56-9; Blumenfeld-Kosinski, Not of a Woman Born, 94-5. I hope to return to this question in a separate article.

147 Al-Zahrāwī's progress in this aspect is undoubtedly the result of his practical experience with this instrument, of which he stipulated explicitly that one (the physician) should use it "so as to allow the midwife to do what she desires" (see Abulcasis On Surgery and Instruments, 488; Weisser, op.

## Chapter 12

In this chapter the author discusses the occurrence of tumours in the uterus．His aetiology is once again humoral，ascribing the first two possible causes of this affliction to superfluities of yellow bile and of coarse black bile．Other causes mentioned are coarse winds，injuries，and amenorrhea．

The main symptoms enumerated by Ibn al－Jazzār for tumours occurring in specific parts of the uterus are similar to those mentioned by Paul of Aegina：

[^46]
## Paul of Aegina

$\tau \widehat{v} \mu \check{\varepsilon} v \gamma \grave{\alpha} \rho$ ő $\pi \iota \sigma \theta \varepsilon v \alpha v ̉ \tau \eta \varsigma ~ \mu o ́ v o v$ i $\varepsilon \gamma \mu \alpha$ vóv $\tau \omega v$ тò ${ }_{\alpha} \lambda \gamma \eta \mu \alpha$ к $\alpha \tau \grave{\alpha}$

 $\dot{\alpha} \pi \varepsilon v \theta \nu \sigma \mu \varepsilon ́ v o v, \tau \hat{\omega} v \delta \grave{\varepsilon}$ е́ $\mu \pi \rho о \sigma \theta \varepsilon v$ グ $\tau \varepsilon$ óSúvŋ к $\alpha \tau \grave{\alpha}$ 七ò $\hat{\eta} \tau \rho 0$ к к人i $\sigma \tau \rho \alpha \gamma \gamma 0 v \rho i ́ \alpha$ ŋ̀ $\delta v \sigma o v \rho i ́ \alpha ~ \gamma i v e \tau \alpha ı$



 $\tau \eta ̂ \varsigma ~ i \varepsilon \gamma \mu \circ \vee \eta ̂ \varsigma ~ \kappa \alpha \tau \alpha ̀ ~ \tau o ̀ ~ દ ̇ \pi ı \gamma \alpha ́ \sigma \tau \rho ı o v ~$

 ن́ $\pi$ о $\pi i ́ \pi \tau \varepsilon \imath$ тò $\sigma \tau$ ó $\mu$ ıov．${ }^{148}$

[^47]If the tumour occurs in the front part of the uterus, it is followed by a heavy pain in the vagina with retention of urine, and if it occurs in the orifice of the uterus, it is followed by pain of the navel and stomach, and if the midwife inserts her finger, she finds the orifice of the uterus closed and hard. If the tumour is in the side of the back part of the uterus, it is followed by a heavy pain in the back, by retention of the faeces, and by pain under the epigastrium.

When, therefore, the posterior parts only are inflamed, the pain is in the loins, and hardened lumps of faeces are confined by the compression of the rectum; but when the anterior parts are affected the pain is seated at the pubes, and there is strangury or dysuria from pressure on the bladder. When the sides are inflamed, there is tightness of the groins and heaviness of the limbs, but when the fundus is affected the pain is principally near the navel, with swelling thereof; and when the inflammation is in its mouth there is pain in the hypogastrium, and if the finger be introduced per vaginam, the mouth of the womb will feel hard and unyielding. ${ }^{49}$

For a treatment of these tumours the author differentiates between tumours caused by hot superfluities and those caused by cold. For the former, he recommends bleeding the patient as much as possible from the basilic vein or the median cubital vein. Quoting Galen, he states that women suffering from these tumours derive much more benefit from venesection of their feet rather than of their wrists. ${ }^{150} \mathrm{He}$ then prescribes different decoctions, plasters, poultices, and suppositories. Quoting Dioscurides he remarks that nard cooked in water and used for a compress and for a sitz bath is a good remedy for hot tumours. ${ }^{151}$ From Paul of Aegina Ibn al-Jazzăr takes over a recommendation for the saffronpessary. ${ }^{152}$ For tumours caused by cold, coarse humours the author prescribes a variety of decoctions, suppositories, poultices, and salves, as well as a regimen of light nourishment.

149 Transl. Adams III, 64.
${ }^{150}$ Galen, De venaesectione adversus Erasistratum (Kühn XI, 303).
${ }^{151}$ Dioscurides, ed. Wellmann I, 7; transl. Berendes I, 8.
152 Paul of Aegina, op. cit., VII, 24, 3.

Chapter 13

In this chapter Ibn al-Jazzār discusses the occurrence of ulcers in the uterus and their treatment. The causes which he gives for such ulcers are similar to those mentioned by Paul of Aegina:

Ibn al-Jazzār

Innahu qad yatawalladu l-qurūhu wa-l-jirāhu min qibali waramin hārin aw dubaylatin tanfajiru wa-rubbamā 'arada min dawa' in hārrin tashrabuhu l-mar'atu aw min isqaṭi l-haml.

Paul of Aegina



 $\dot{\alpha} \pi \sigma \sigma \tau \eta \mu \dot{\alpha} \tau \omega v \quad \sigma v \rho \rho \alpha \gamma \varepsilon ́ v \tau \omega \nu .153$

Ulcers and wounds may originate in the uterus from a hot tumour or an abscess which bursts open, and sometimes they occur from a hot drug which a woman takes or from a miscarriage.

The uterus is often ulcerated from difficult labour, extraction of the foetus, or forced abortion, or injury of the same occasioned by acrid medicines, or by a defluxion, or from abscesses which have burst. ${ }^{154}$

The symptoms enumerated by Ibn al-Jazzar are also similar to those mentioned by Paul of Aegina:

Ibn al-Jazzār
Wa-l-dalīlu 'alā l-qurūhi sayyalanu l-mäddati wa-l-waj'u wa-l-darabänu fi l-rahimi ma'a $l$ ladh'i l-shadìdi fa-in kāna fi ljurhi ta'akkulun kāna lawnu lmaddati aswada wa-rā’ihatuhā muntinatan ma'a l-waj‘i wa-lishti'al.

Paul of Aegina

 $\alpha i \mu \alpha \tau \widehat{\delta} \varepsilon \varsigma$ ŋ̀ $\tau \rho v \gamma \hat{\omega} \delta \varepsilon \varsigma$, $\sigma \grave{v} \nu$ $\pi \varepsilon \rho \imath \omega \delta v v i ́ \alpha, \dot{\rho} v \pi \alpha \rho o \hat{v}$ \&̀̀ őv七os
 $\pi o ́ v \varrho, v \varepsilon \mu \circ \mu \varepsilon ́ v o v ~ \delta \grave{\varepsilon} \delta v \sigma \hat{\omega} \delta \varepsilon \varsigma, \mu \varepsilon ́ \lambda \alpha v$,



[^48]Symptoms of these ulcers are the discharge of [purulent] matter and a throbbing pain in the uterus with a severe burning. If the wound is cankering, the colour of the [purulent] matter is black and has a stinking smell; it is accompanied by pain and inflammation.


#### Abstract

...for the fluid which is discharged varies in its qualities. When the ulcer is inflamed, the discharge is small, bloody, or feculent, with great pain, but when the ulcer is foul, the discharge is in greater quantity, and ichorous, with less pain. When the ulcer is spreading, the discharge is fetid, black, attended with great pains, and other symptoms of inflammation. ${ }^{156}$


The treatment recommended for these ulcers consists of simple and compound drugs, decoctions, suppositories, a special diet, and sitz baths. Ibn al-Jazzār concludes this chapter with two suppositories recommended by Dioscurides; one consisting of meal prepared from the seeds of fenugreek mixed with fat of a goose, good for hardness and obstruction of the uterus, and the other of sap of figs kneaded with egg yolk, good for ulcers and amenorrhea. ${ }^{157}$

## Chapter 14

The central subject of this chapter is the prolapse of the uterus and its treatment. This affliction may occur, according to the author, when the ligaments of the uterus are relaxed because of an excess of moisture, a continuous sitting on cold things, bathing in cold water, or difficult labour.

[^49]As a treatment Ibn al-Jazzarr first of all recommends a special sleeping position of the body, namely, on one's back, while the knees are kept together, but the lower legs apart. Similar advice is offered by Soranus and by Paul of Aegina. ${ }^{158}$ Then he prescribes other means, such as linen bandages, ointments, sitz baths, and sneezing. Quoting Dioscurides, he states that fumigation with the dung of a cow restores the condition of the prolapsed uterus. ${ }^{159}$

This treatment by means of foul odours goes back to the Hippocratic treatise On Women's Diseases, where the author recommends fetid odours to be administered from below and pleasant odours from above. ${ }^{160}$ As in the case of hysterical suffocation it presupposes the existence of an open passage between the uterus and nose, and recommends the same remedy, but in reverse. For now the fetid odours should not be applied to the nose, but to the genitals, so that the uterus would flee the foul odours below and return to its place.

Next to this treatment Ibn al-Jazzār recommends different kinds of oils to be smeared on the orifice of the uterus, and a variety of compound drugs to be applied there also. Ibn al-Jazzāar concludes this chapter by stating that the patient should have the same treatment as that given in the case of the relaxation and protrusion of the rectum, which he discussed in the twentieth chapter of the fourth book of the Zād al-musäfir.

[^50]
## Chapter 15

In this chapter Ibn al-Jazzar discusses the regimen which is good for pregnant women. ${ }^{161} \mathrm{He}$ starts his discussion by quoting Galen's simile comparing the connection between the foetus and the uterus with that between the fruit and the tree. At the beginning and end this connection is very weak and easily broken off, while in the middle period it is strongest. ${ }^{162}$ Ibn Sina starts his discussion of the preservation of the foetus and the prevention of miscarriage with the same simile. ${ }^{163}$

Since this connection is so fragile at the beginning and end of the pregnancy, Ibn al-Jazzăr discusses these topics first of all. He formulates some general rules for the beginning of pregnancy, to prevent the pregnant woman from getting upset during that phase. For instance, one should not mention in her presence different kinds of food which are not available at that time of the year, and in case she wants something which is available, one should hasten to bring it to her. Ointments and poultices should be applied in order to strengthen the connection of the foetus with the uterus. For the end of the pregnancy he recommends bathing, ointments, and relaxing food. He concludes this section with different remedies for cases involving swollen feet.

Ibn al-Jazzăr then discusses the treatment of pregnant women in general, when they crave for bad kinds of food, like clay and

[^51]charcoal. ${ }^{164}$ This phenomenon, called кí $\sigma \alpha$ (pica) in ancient sources, is discussed extensively by Soranus. ${ }^{165}$ Galen states that it is caused by an affliction of the stomach, located at its opening. ${ }^{166}$ The author advises a woman overtaken by this lust to train her body, and to take solid bread combined with different kinds of fruit. When she craves for clay and charcoal, she should take roasted chickpeas and beans, while fragrant poultices should be applied to her stomach.

In the last section of this chapter, Ibn al-Jazzār discusses the treatment of a pregnant woman when humours are stirred up in her body, and winds in the stomach or uterus. Especially the occurrence of winds should be treated immediately, lest they cause a miscarriage. Recommended remedies are a compound powder and electuary. The chapter concludes with a prescription of a compound remedy derived from Galen good for difficult childbirth, for the sting of a tarantula and for poisonous scorpions.

Chapter 16

The subject of this chapter is difficult childbirth. The causes enumerated by Ibn al-Jazzăr are very similar to those mentioned in Pseudo-Galen's Definitiones medicae:

[^52]Ibn al-Jazzar
Illa annahu rubbama 'arada li-lnisā'i 'uşru l-wiladati wa-yakūnu dhalika min asbābin kathīratin warubbama 'arada min qibali ạhzānin waradat 'ala l-mar'ati wa-rubbamā kāna dhalika min qibali diqi majra l-rahimi wa-rubbamã kana dhalika idha mata l-janinu fa-la yataharraku wa-là yu'înu fi waqti khurūjihi warubbamā kanna dhālika idhā hamilat al-mar'atu wa-hiya saghirratun warubbamā kana dhalika min qibali faṣli l-shitā'i...wa-rubbamā kāna dhälika min qibali faşli l-sayf...

Sometimes, however, a woman has a difficult childbirth, for which there can be many causes. Sometimes it happens because of worries affecting a woman, and sometimes because of the narrowness of the passage of the uterus. Sometimes it is caused by fatness of the woman, and sometimes when the foetus is dead and does not move, and therefore does not help in the delivery. Sometimes it happens because the woman is [too] young when she gets pregnant, and sometimes because of the winter season... Sometimes it happens because of the summer season...

Pseudo-Galen

Ai $\delta v \sigma \tau о к i ́ \alpha l ~ к \alpha \tau \alpha ̀ ~ \tau \rho \varepsilon i ̂ s ~ \gamma i ́ v o v \tau \alpha ı ~$
 $\kappa \alpha \tau \dot{\alpha}$ тò кvov́ $\mu \varepsilon v o v, \kappa \alpha \tau \dot{\alpha} \tau \grave{\alpha}$

 $\dot{\varepsilon} \sigma \chi \eta \mu \varepsilon ́ v \eta \nu \geqslant \geqslant \lambda$ ט́ $\pi \alpha ı \varsigma$ そ̀ $\dot{\alpha} \lambda \lambda \omega \tau \iota v i ̀$ $\pi \dot{\alpha} \theta \varepsilon \iota \quad \sigma \omega \mu \eta \tau \kappa \hat{\omega} \varsigma \quad \delta \dot{\varepsilon} \quad \hat{\eta}$ $\sigma \tau \varepsilon ́ v o \pi o \rho o v$ ov̂̉ $\sigma \alpha v$ ท̀ к $\alpha \tau \alpha \pi i ́ \mu \varepsilon \lambda o v$


 $\eta \geqslant \delta i ́ \delta v \mu o v \geqslant \geqslant \tau \varepsilon \rho \alpha \bar{\omega} \delta \varepsilon \varsigma, \pi \alpha \rho \grave{\alpha} \delta \dot{\varepsilon}$
 к $\alpha$ v́ $\alpha$ тоц $\sigma \varphi о \delta \rho о$ v̂. 167

Difficult childbirths can be caused in three different ways, by the pregnant woman, by the foetus, by an external factor. It is caused by the pregnant woman in two ways: psychical, when she is overcome by envy, grief or another emotion; physical, when she has a narrow passage, is very fat, is pregnant for the first time, or when her uterus is without food. It is caused by the foetus, when it is dead, or misshapen with two heads. It is caused by an external factor, when there is an extreme winter or summer. ${ }^{168}$

Ibn al-Jazzär then remarks that the following means are advisable for a woman suffering from a difficult childbirth: 1 . bathing in water containing fenugreek and other ingredients; 2 . rubbing the thighs and abdomen; 3. massage of sides and waist; 4. taking of

[^53]different drugs, such as oxymel, pounded mint with wine; 5. sneezing; 6 . a bodily position, slightly lower than normal. He further recommends a magical means, namely, to hang a dry stone or cyclamen on the thigh of the woman suffering from difficult childbirth. Al-T.abarı remarks in his Firdaws al-hikma that if one hangs Cretensian storax on her thigh, she will not feel any pain. ${ }^{169}$ Guy de Chauliac (14th cent.) remarks that according to the experts cyclamen tied to the thigh facilitates the birth." ${ }^{170}$

## Chapter 17

In this chapter Ibn al-Jazzar gives a list of contraceptives and/or abortifacients, which he has derived, as he remarks explicitly, from the works of the ancient physicians. One of the sources certainly consulted by him was Dioscurides, since he is not only quoted explicitly, but also describes the contraceptive and abortifacient properties of the drugs mentioned in similar terms.

Ibn al-Jazzăr's aim in drawing up this list is, as he states, that women might know these drugs and beware of using them, since they corrupt the foetus. From this one might, at first sight, draw the conclusion that Ibn al-Jazzär is opposed to the use of these drugs. In another work, however, namely, his Țibb al-fuqara', Ibn al-Jazzarr's attitude towards the application of these means might be called "neutral", when on the one hand he gives a list of

[^54]fertility drugs, and on the other hand a list of mainly magical contraceptives, quoting amongst others al-Tabari and "Iṭharqas" (= Xenocrates of Aphrodisias; 1st cent.). ${ }^{171}$ An example is: "Xenocrates said: If one removes the anklebone of a live weasel and hangs it on a woman she will not get pregnant as long as it hangs on her."

This "neutral" attitude of Ibn al-Jazzăr is in conformity with that of Islam, since the use of contraceptives and abortifacients as a way of birth control was permitted in Islamic society, and was sanctioned by Islamic law. The numerous discussions of contraception and abortion in different genres of Islamic literature, such as medical, legal, erotic and popular, are clear proof of this. ${ }^{172}$

The question why Ibn al-Jazzār inserted his warning in the Zād al-musäfir, was perhaps that he wanted to urge women to use these drugs only when there was a medical indication for it, namely, in the case of a pregnant young woman who otherwise might die in childbirth, or of a woman with a disease or malfunction of the uterus. These cases are, according to

[^55]Musallam, the two principal reasons advanced by the Arab physicians for birth control. ${ }^{173}$ Ibn Sīnā, for instance, remarks:


#### Abstract

At times it may be necessary to induce abortion; that is, when the pregnant woman is young and small and it is feared that childbirth would cause her death, or when she suffers from a disease of the uterus or when a fleshy growth in the uterus makes it very difficult for the foetus to emerge. Also when the foetus dies in the womb of the woman. ${ }^{174}$


The first contraceptive mentioned is tar which, according to Ibn al-Jazzār, Dioscurides had already described as "one of the most effective drugs for the prevention of conception so that someone who uses it, will be barren forever." ${ }^{175}$ This contraceptive is, according to Musallam, the only male contraceptive prescribed in Arabic medical literature. ${ }^{176}$ In this chapter, however, Ibn alJazzăr recommends as a male contraceptive juice of mint, while in his Țibb al-fuqarā' he recommends olive oil. ${ }^{177}$ Some of the other drugs mentioned are savin, cyclamen, lupine, birthwort, cinnamon, and castoreum.

The way of application recommended for these drugs usually takes the form of a suppository or pessary, but sometimes

[^56]fumigation, namely, with cardamom, galbanum, and sulphur, is also mentioned, and juice of cyclamen is best applied under the navel. Alum should be put in the orifice of the uterus in order to prevent conception or to expel the foetus. The author concludes this chapter by remarking that the drugs which he has mentioned are not only effective in expelling the living foetus, but also the dead one.

Chapter 18

The central topic of this chapter is the extraction of the placenta from the uterus. The author starts his discussion straightaway by recommending different means of extraction. These are: 1. to sneeze by means of soapwort, while the mouth and nostrils are kept closed. This kind of treatment is already recommended in the Hippocratic Corpus, although Soranus stated that it was bad advice because it causes the danger of immediate haemorrhage or of later nervous sympathetic reactions. ${ }^{178} 2$. to take a compound drug, such as water with ashes and marshmallow, and to throw it up. 3. to lick saffron, prepare a little ball of it and hang it on the patient. This magic preparation has most probably been derived from al-Tabari's Firdaws al-hikma, where the same remedy is mentioned. ${ }^{179}$ 4. the application of certain pessaries. 5. to apply certain fumigations, for instance, with the eye of a salt-water fish or with the hoof of a horse, or with the excrements of a cat or

[^57]with harmel or with mustard. These fumigations figure in alTabarı’s Firdaws al-hikma as well. ${ }^{180}$ Soranus, however, condemned fumigations because they increase inflammation by their pungency and cause congestion in the head. ${ }^{181}$

Chapter 19

In this chapter the disease called "sciatica" is the central subject. In accordance with the humoral theory, Ibn al-Jazzar states that this disease is caused by mucous viscous humour settled in the socket of the hip. The same cause is mentioned by Paul of Aegina, as the following table will show:

Ibn al-Jazzăr
wa-aktharu mā yatawalladu min al-kaymūsi l-balghamānīyi $l$ laziji idhä rasaba fi huqqi l-wark.

Most of the time it (sciatica) originates from mucous viscous humour when it settles in the socket of the hip.

Paul of Aegina

 $\mu \varepsilon ́ v o \varsigma ~ \tau \hat{1} \kappa \alpha \tau$ ' ì $\sigma$ रiov $\delta i \alpha \rho \theta \rho \omega ́ \sigma \varepsilon \iota .182$

The cause of it then is a thick and pituitous humour fixed in the articulation of the hip-joint. ${ }^{183}$

The symptoms mentioned by Ibn al-Jazzar for this affliction are again similar to those mentioned by Paul of Aegina:

[^58]Ibn al-Jazzăr
Fa-ya'rudu min dhälika waj'un fì l-warki. Wa-rubbama yamtaddu ila baṭni l-saqi wa-l-ka'bi wayanzilu ila khinṣiri l-rijli warubbamã kana fíl-jānibayn.

Pain in the hip results from this. Sometimes the pain extends to the calf and heel and descends to the little toe of the foot. Sometimes the pain occurs in the sides.

Paul of Aegina
 $\sigma \varphi \alpha i ́ \rho \omega \mu \alpha$ к $\alpha$ ì đòv $\beta$ ou $\beta \hat{\omega} v \alpha$ тó $\pi \omega v$



The pain in these cases extends from the parts about the buttocks and groins to the knee, and often as far as the extremity of the foot. ${ }^{185}$

Other symptoms referred to by Ibn al-Jazzăr are pain and heaviness in the hip, mostly occurring to middle-aged and old people, and severe pain, a constant heavy throbbing, a burning sensation and inflammation, mostly occurring to young men.

The treatment recommended for sciatica caused by a hot humour consists of bleeding, purgatives, enemas, cold food, frequent bathing in sweet water, and ointments with cold oils. When it is caused by a cold humour Ibn al-Jazzär prescribes the following treatment: purgatives, enemas, bathing, plasters, poultices, and oils.

Moreover, the patient should adhere to a special regimen, consisting of moderate eating and drinking and sexual abstention. Other means recommended are different kinds of compound remedies, such as, for instance, the sagapenum pill, the "wellfabricated pill", or the one composed by Isḥăq ibn 'Imrann.

[^59]Chapter 20

In this last chapter of book six of the Zād al-musāfir the author discusses another affliction of the joints, namely, gout. Just as in the previous chapter, the aetiology and treatment of this affliction are based on the humoral theory. Main causes mentioned by the author are bad humours and weakness of the members. The same causes are referred to by Paul of Aegina. ${ }^{186}$

Ibn al-Jazzār states that this weakness arises from a bad regimen, consisting of a restful, luxurious life, immoderate eating, and drinking. But especially when this bad regimen is combined with frequent sexual intercourse, it inevitably causes, as he remarks, gout, since it is extremely harmful for the nerves which are corrupted, and for the joints which get hot and attract the superfluities of the body.

Three categories of people do therefore not, according to Ibn al-Jazzār, suffer from gout: 1 . Eunuchs, since they do not have sexual intercourse; but they do suffer from it when they lead a very immoderate life, indulging in all kinds of food. This statement is similar to that of Galen, who, while commenting upon Hippocrates' saying that eunuchs do not suffer from gout, remarks that this may have been true for Hippocrates' time, but that in his own time eunuchs suffer from it just like other people, because of their luxurious, immoderate way of life. ${ }^{187}$ 2. Young boys, since they do not have sexual intercourse. This saying is similar to that of Hippocrates and Galen; for Hippocrates stated

[^60]that young boys do not suffer from gout before having sexual intercourse, and Galen confirmed this statement. ${ }^{188}$ 3. Women; although they have sexual intercourse, they do not suffer at all from gout, in the first place because they do not become so tired by it as men do, and in the second place because they expel the superfluities from their bodies every month by means of their periods. Galen, commenting upon Hippocrates' statement that women do not suffer from gout before the end of their menstruation, states that this may be true for Hippocrates' days, but that in his time some women do suffer from it, because of their many failures. ${ }^{189}$

The treatment recommended by Ibn al-Jazzar consists first of all of an evacuation of the sickening hot or cold superfluities from the body of the patient by means of different kinds of compound pills, such as the colchicum pill. Then the feet should be treated with poultices, plasters, oils, and fomentations; the patient should adhere to a regimen of foodstuff which digests quickly, and do balanced physical exercises.

## Addendum:

When I had completed a "camera-ready" copy of my edition of book six of the Zād al-musāfir, I received from Professor Hans Daiber of the Vrije Universiteit in Amsterdam a microfilm of

[^61]book six from a hitherto unknown MS, namely, Tarim (Hadramawt; Yemen), Ahqaf-library, 2463. The text of book six features on fols. 90b-105a; it is unvocalised, but provided with diacritical points, and was copied, as stated on fol. 119b, in the year 1158/1746. ${ }^{190}$

Unfortunately, it was too late to incorporate this MS in the edition itself. I have, however, checked whether this MS is a valuable addition to the existing MSS in the form of variants which provide a better reading of the text. The result of my investigation is that it does not contain such readings, but is replete with mistakes and corruptions. The following selective list may suffice to confirm this:

## Text

1. 10: li-yadūma baqā̃' jinsihā
2. 21: furūj
3. 45: al-nabd
4. 110: bi-awzän
5. 210: li-shakwa
6. 233: Athiniya
7. 253: al-imdha'
8. 307: al-in'az
9. 345: al-bathr
10. 408: mäzaja
11. 489: fayd
12. 662: dam
13. 803: wajadat
14. 979: ittisaluhu
15. 1165: al-hijabi

MS Tarim
li-yadfa' biha hissan
qurūh
al-mani
$b i-a d w a ̄$
sukan
Makka
al-imtilā
al-inghass
al-bawl
waquafa
ba'd
min
wa-hadatha
aydan
al-bukhär

[^62]
## ARABIC TEXT

Sigla and abbreviations:

B $\quad=$ Berlin 252 (14th -15 th cent.)
$B^{1} \quad=$ Note in the margin of B
D $\quad=$ Dresden 209 (1091/1680)
$\mathrm{D}^{1} \quad=$ Note in the margin of D
O = Oxford, Bodleian Huntington 302 (738/1337)
$\mathrm{O}^{1} \quad=$ Note in the margin of O
T = Teheran, Malik 4486 (994/1586)
$\mathrm{T}^{1} \quad=$ Note in the margin of T
<> = addendum
$+\quad=$ addidit

- $\quad$ omisit
* = conieci vel correxi
inv. = invertit
ditt. = dittography
? = doubtful reading
http://taylorandfrancis.com


## بسم اللّه الرحمن الرحيم


 تعرض في آلات التناسل وهي عشرونٌ بابـا
 خلق لجميعهـها أعضـاء تتـاسـل بها


'المقالة...رحمـه اللأه: المقالة السادسة عـلاج في الادوا من كتاب زاد المسافر من الطبّ وهو الكتاب الكامل في علاج البدن أجمع مـرفة ما يـا يعرض من الدا
 B إبراهيم ابن بي خالد المعروف بابن الحرّار الحكيم الطبيب

 d BT البارئ: اللّه T أراد: أردنا

D خاصيّة بها تكون اللآة: خاصةّة بها تكون الدريّة
"المستعملة: + لذلك B

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { وُوحبّ: حبب B } \\
& \text { " إلى: J- }
\end{aligned}
$$


 الجما ع فينقطع التوليد






$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { I } \\
& \text { 'إليه: إليها } \\
& \text { r } \\
& \text { DO- : }{ }^{\text {- }} \\
& \text { O- - الا تفارقه }
\end{aligned}
$$

B جنسها: الجنس D B

TV التوليد: التناسل
O- D يحتاج: محتاجا "
'جعل: + البارئ O
" هذه: لهذه

"ما فعله: فعله O- O


 20 منفعة كلّ واحد منهما ـ فتبارك اللّه أحسن و الخال القين.



'يخرج: مخرجه D يخرجه OT
'فيه: منه D
"
أقبول: لقبول D
D D الذي: فيه
"فيه: التي
"لكتّا: الكنّها
B- الهيئات. .واحد
B أحسن الخالقين: ربّالعالمينين
B المولّدة: المولودة O الموالدة المالمنين
ا"أفاعيلها: أفعالها
"اخُقت: ألفت B

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { D } \\
& \text { 0 } \\
& \text { "به: فيه D }
\end{aligned}
$$

هذه المقـالة السـادسـة والسـبب’ الفـاعل لها والبرهان الدالّ عليها وطريق مداواتها ـ ونبتدئ من ذلك بالك بالقـول في قلّة البـاه 25 والضعف عنه وباللّه التوفيق .

## الباب الأوّل من والضعف عنه


 وذلك أنه سـاعة يريد الإنسـان الجماع أو
 B dT أذكر: ذاكا
"اتلك: في هذا
'والسبب: بالسبب
D-:

أَأقول إنّه ركّب: وقد يعرض D
T أْإلحليل: الإنسان
B

D له ريع: الريح
هو

القلب. فتدخل تلك الريح في عصب الإحليل المجـوّف فينتفخ
 خُقق له.
وإنّما تأتيه قوّة الإنعاظ من القلب وذلك أنّ القلب يرسل
الروح الدمـاغ تقوى فيه الريح وتقلّ رطوبته فيجد الإنعاظ من غير إفراغ مني 40



 والحركـة ومنَ فكتلك يتأىى من الأنتيين إلى جميع البـن قوّة هي هي في الذكو


 عديم" الشعر وتكنن" "عروقه على مثال" " عروق النساء ولا 50


يشتهي الباه ولا تتوّقّ ن نفسه إليه.

 من الأعضاء الرئيسة. وذلك أنّهما يغيّران المني تغيـيرا




B- :وتكون
" مثال: أمثال

B
B
T
T- : لبقاء
D تخييرا: تغيرّا D
B B
وإنَّما: ومنهما
B B مستقيمة: + وذلك
O وذذلك :وكذلك
" تكثر : تكون ال
Tr

تغيّرا كثيرا لم تكن' القوّة على الباه مستقيمة مـعتدلة. وذلك







> B- مرزاج
> B B تكن: تكون
> D- آنَّهن

آبن: لو D
D- : على
D لعلّة: اقلّة
D للَلّة: اقلّة"
" حمّل: جعل D


T- : لا.... ${ }^{\text {. }}$
"لالّلة: لقلّة
B- :ويكن...لبرد"
"الـلّة: لقلّة
D- O
D والرطوبة: + على مزاج الأنثيين

صاحب ذلك قليل الثـهوة ولا يكاد يهش"ّ إلى البـاه لعلّة' البرد ويكون ${ }^{\text {r }}$



 وعند 「" الجماع والسفاد يحتاج إلى الخلّتّينغ جميعا، أعني
'لعلّة: لقلّة D
'ويكن كثير: وكثرة
لَالّلة: القّلة
Bأرسطاطاليس: + الحكيم
º إنّه: ان T T
'الناس: الحيوان أعني من الناس أولا

DT والريش: وكثرة الريشاع
"-تكون: يكونا
"إفراط: افواه BD- إنثرة:"

D الرطوبات: الرطوبة
D-:
BT الخلّتنن: العلّتّن
 ويحتاج إلى ثالثبهُ قوام الباه وهو الريح الريح النافخة. فمن أجل
 الخصال الثلاثة إذا اجتمعت في غذاء أو دواء كان الاء مولّا لألدا للمني مقوّيا على الباه، أعني الحرارة والرطان الرطوبة والريح. فإن لم يجتمع
 واحدة. ومن علم هذه الجملة وعرف أي"ّ الأغذية تجتمـع فيهـا هذه الخصال الثـلاثة او خصلة واحدة أو خصلت ألتان كان على أن يؤلّفها من طعامين الو او أكثر إذا كان كلّ واحد منها لا يبلغ على حدّته أن يولد "منيّا.



$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { 'الحرارة: الجما O }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { ' } \\
& \text { با به: وبه } \\
& \text { DT الأستاذون: الأستاذين }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { D-: أن" } \\
& \text { B أكثير: كثيرة } \\
& \text { فهذا: هذا }
\end{aligned}
$$

وحده' يولد المني ولا يحتات أن يخلط مـعـه غيره ومـزاجـه على 85 الانفـراد قـريـب من مـزاج جَ هريســة الحنطة ولا


 بها يكون الغذاء مـولّدا للمني. فيـحتا


BO السلجم: السحم B فكثيرة DT فثير: فإنَه كثير " مغذّ: غاذيا: D

"
r'فيه: فيها ماتلا
"الخلتان: -O خصلتان
B- T الخلال: الخصال:
ها التي: الذي
or الآكل: إلى الأكل

عليهه مـا يكسبـه حـرارة بقـدر مـا يــتـاج إليـه ليكون مـائلا'

 بالباقلّى تولّد منها طعام يكثرْ المني ويقوّي على الباهـ

 منها أغذية مثل اللحمـان الرطبة " والأدمـنـة ومـخاخ البيض
 B B
'مائلا: ملائم B B "'فإنّها حارّة: فيها حرارة "خلط: كان
O يكثر المني: يولّد المني ويكثره O
"هذا: + الباه B
rؤلف: تولّد o
A خنعف: يضعف B

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { ج }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { " وتدرْه: تغزره العاء } \\
& \text { D الرطبة: الطرية: } \\
& \text { " آثمر: وحب" }
\end{aligned}
$$

ذلك.

 السـقنقـو . وذكـر فيـهـ دياسـقـوريدوس ْ أنّ هذا الأصل إنـا أمسكـه إنسـان

 والزعفران والحرف" وبزر الأنجرة والآنيسون وبزر الكتّان إذا

8الفلفل: القلقل
D- أدوية وهي:

'السقنقو: الصنوبر
DT- : والدواء...السقنقور الصور
BD دياسقوريدوس: ديسقويدوس
'إنسان: + عنده O
بيده: + وإن لم يشربه T
B اللجماع: الجما ع
B
D يتحركّك منه الجما ع O الجماع: محركّك للجماع
"ويهيجه: وهيجه B
B- :"البهمن:
T

 وبزره والجـزر ومـا أشــبـهـ زلك. وقــد تـؤلف من هـذه الأدوية المفردة״ أدويـة مـركّبـة بـأوزان




 'وشيء من: O
「مقدار: مقدارا B + كثير DT
'يهيج: هيج OT

B بقوّة: ويقويّها
'وبزره والجزر: -BO

A
B
B- :'همن ذلكا'
"الألفه: من تأليف
Tr
"الفلفل: القلقل

عشرة مـثاقـيل وحبّ الزلم عشـرون مثقـالا وتوذري ' أحمـر وأبيض من كلّ واحد خمسة مثاقيل، بزر البصل الثامي وبير وبزر
 الفار من كلّ واحد ستّة دراهم

 ومخاليف العصـافير والفراريجْ بالحمّص ولحم ضــنـ أن حولي
 معتّقّ فإنّه نافع ^ إن شاء اللّه.

> T- Tو أنمسم...مثقالا
> "مقشور: مقشرّ
'توذري: فوذنج D لودريح T
 السقنقود من كلّواحد عشرة مثاقيل B + T الهليون وملح الاسقنقود وسرته من كلّ واحد عشرة مثاقيل

T الطبرزد: منزوع الرغوة الرا
D- : والغذاء: والطعام T والغذاء...يطيخ
B' والفراريج: والرازيانج B ${ }^{\circ}$ الفراريج
'نبيذ: أحمر B
B
T نافع إن شاء اللّه: بديع

ومن 'ذلك صففة جوارش ألّفته يهيج البـاه وينفع من برد 125




 من كلّ واحد أربعة مـثاقيل، قاقلّة وزعفران وقرنفل وعاقرقرحا
 وتنخل وتعـجن بعـسل منـزوع الرغـوة وترفـع في آنيـة
 135 البندقة" " فإنّه" ملوكي عجيب سريع النجح.
'ومن ذلك: - الار
T'السفل: الأسفل T

BT فانيد: + مبزرّ
T' ${ }^{\prime}$
B B
آَنية: إنا BT
ملساء داخلها: -B أملس T
وعشية: واصيلا BT
B- : ما
"البندقة: + إلى الجوزة BT

صـفـة جـوارش ألّفتـهُ يقوّي على البـاه ويطيب النفس
 الكـيتـين

 وقـسط حلو وسنبل هندي وزعــفــران وبزر رازيانـج عــريض


**ينفّي: وينقّي MSS
'ويزيل: ينزل B
BT الكلاتين: الكلى
B الحافظ حفظا: في الحفظ B
الجوارشنات: الجوارشات B
وسمّيناه: واسمه B وقد سميته T
يؤخذ: + أخلاطه T
ونزنجبيل: + يابس T
B اليابس: المجفّف B.
"
T جبلي: البستاني
T"برّى: نهرى T

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { r'فإنَّه، ..النجح: فإنّه عجيب B } \\
& \text { D ألّفته:أللفته }
\end{aligned}
$$

ومن الســاذ الهندي والدار فلفل والفلفل الأبيض والأســود





 الرغوة حتى تمتزج العقاقير" وترفع في إناء أملس الداخل"
"
B- :والأسود:'
'

B مقشرّ: مقسور B
B-: :

 ^ُجبّا: وييالغ في سحقها BT

B- 'وتجمع
T'منروع الرغوة: منزعا
B العقاقير: العقاير الرا
r'الداخل: -DT

مـبـّر بــود هندي والشـربة منه قـدر ' الجـوزة ويؤخـذ قبل الطعام وبعده فإنّه ينفعَّ إن شاء اللّه






 بعسل منزوع الرغوة والشربة منه مثقالان إلى أربـة مثاقيل فإنّه جيّد.
'قدر: مثل DT
T غ غ غ
'
D- اعامي: D
B الإبردة: الأرواح ابردة
'السفل: الأسـفل BT
BT- مقشثر:
B أنجرة: إذخر -
فصفصة: رطبة T
O- أوقية.. .. واحد

يؤخذ من القرنفل نصف درهم فيسحق ويشرب بلبن حليب أو





 منهـا" وزن درهمـين بشـراب ممزوج
'لبن: شرب لبن BT
أؤ: أن B
'
Tويسقى: يدقّ ويشرب B فيدقّ ويسقى
ويدهن به القضيب: ويدهن الترصب D + أيضا O
B- الشقاقل المربّى
Bالجزر BT الجزر الجز

T الدردار: الدور؟
OT فيسحقان جميعا سخقا ناعما D D' "منها: منه T
"'ويحقن: ويحتقن D
T'

المسـخنـة ويدهن القضـيب والأنتـيـين بدهن الخـيـري أو بدهن النرجس أو' بدهـن البـان أو بدهن النـاردين أو بدهـن القـسط الـو
 أيام ويصفّى ويدهن بذلك الدهن المراقّ والذكر فإنّه ينعظْ


 الرازيانج وآنيسون وبزر جزر برّي وورق" 180

أو بدهن البان: -
B- : دهن
'ويعلق: ويوضع B
T- :ويصفّى
Oنـنظ: + إنعاظا شديدا جميعا
'صفة: - OT
DO أألفته: اللفته :
Dينفع: ويقوّي
D- :والكبد"
'
"










> 'جرجير: جزر
> 「 مائة درهم: مثل وذن الجميع
> 'يجمع: يدق" 0
> T- : حارّ

> الماء: الصفو B
> Tوني: ويوْخذ O يؤخذ وْزنجبيل: + يابس و وقرنفل: + وفلفل
> T- :ودار فلفل" وان
> B- وققاقلّة
> D- :
> "r

ويسـحقِ ويربط في خرقـة خفيـفـة رباطا مسـترخيّـا ثمّ يطبخ مـع العسل والماء بنار ليّنة ويمرس الخرقـة وقتا بــد وقت حتى 190


 الجزر " 'فهو أقوى في المعوتة"



$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { B- : ويسحق' } \\
& \text { ث'ثمٌ يجعل: ويرفع B } \\
& \text { "إناء: النيم OT + مدهون DT } \\
& \text { كا مذابة: مدافة BT ممزوجة D } \\
& \text { B شراب رفيع: جامع المنفعة بديع } \\
& \text { 'زيد: زاد BT } \\
& \text { B- في } \\
& \text { رُرل: رطلا BT } \\
& \text { O-: }
\end{aligned}
$$

D الجزر: الجرجير
"المعونة: المعدة O له T
r
B
D
 السمك الطرّي والبقلة اليمانيـة والسرمق والقرع وما أشبـ ألـبه ذلك
 القرع المشوي كيما يرطب أعضاء المني ويبرّد حرارتها ولاء ويدهن 200 الذكروالأنثيين بدهن البنفسج ودهن حبّ القرع ودهن الشير الشيرج ودهن نيلوفر وما أشبه ذلك.



 'وخاصتّ: وبخاصتة
"رائب البقر: لبن البقر
'وأن يأكل: ويأكل B وليأكل
B- ويدهن: ويحقن DO ويدهن...ذلك B
O

إْتّبعت: إتّفقت B أنفقنا لها
ثقوّت: قوّة B قوّمت O قرب T
"الهمّ: الغمّ DT

"الفراسة: الشهوة
Tإنّ الشههوة: الشهوة T T

 وتـهلّل ${ }^{\text {إلـى }}$


'
" كلّ: كان B
T- : 'لها
'ذكر ود": إظهار ودّ BT إظهار زينة D
هإظهار: وذكر BDT
'يد: ثدي
"وتهلّل: وتهليل B وتهلك T
"من يحب": - مت
"وتفدية: وتبديه D
" المن: من
" وتنفّس: ويتفيّر D
أثشهها: أشبهه D
B B O اللشهوة: + زائد في الجما ع نافع من الصدّ والإنقطا ع B الثانى: + من المقالة السادسة

إنّه إذا امتـلأت الأوردة ' والعـصب التي 'في الذكـر ريحـا تـام
 زمـانا ${ }^{\circ}$ شريابسموسوة لـلبـاه
وحدوثهـا يكون من ريح غليظة نافخـة أو من رطوية لزجـة
مـع حرارة مـعتدلة فإن كان قيـامـه من قبل ريح كان هيجـهـ" 220 وسكونه سـريعا وإن كان مـن قبل ' ' رطوبة فلا يكون معه تغيّر
T الأوردة: الأوراد
r'التي: الذي
「 'وغلظ: وتخلط
(وبقي: وقعد D
زْمانا: زمان B دائما O
D- :فيكون: زمان

Vاعظا دائمـا متوترّا: منعظا مـتوتّرا دائمـا B دائمـا متواترا وهو ناعظ D ناعظا
Tائما متواترا
D اللباه: في الباه
O- -
OT برياسموس D فرسيموس B C (بريابسموس: برماسوماش*' " هيجه: هيجانه

B- :





 ودهن الودد مـع الإسفيداج والأقاقيا مـع الخلّ ومـا أشبـه ذلك ولك




الفرش' الباردة.
 الفنجكشت
 أغنس " لأنّ هذه اللفظة اشـــــــقّت من لســان الســريانيين" بالشام من الطهارة.


$$
\begin{array}{r}
\text { B أنَّ نساء أهل: -الفردة: الفراش البارد B }
\end{array}
$$

 B B الفنجكشت: الفنجنبشت
o ينامون: ينام 'عليها: عليه B T- في
^العظام: الكبار B

 "السريانيين: السريانيون B اليونانيين D السريان B

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { r'وينام: ولينام } \\
& \text { " } \\
& \text { BD أحد: إحدى }
\end{aligned}
$$

## 

 إلى عصب الذكر فيمتّد ويهتاج ج الإنسان حينئّ إلى الباه. وقـد ينفع ${ }^{\text {² }}$
 وبجـتب " الأغـنية الحـارّة والأثشـربة الحـارّة" إن شـاء اللّه 245

> الباب الثالث「 في سيلان المني من غير إرادة

'فيخرج منها: فيحدث فيه D فيجري فيها OT "رياح: ريح BT
'ويهتاج: ويهيع " ينفع: ينتفع T
هثيدافا: فيذافا B فيذابا " ${ }^{9}$ Bه: به
'ويجتب: + الأدوية'
"الحارّة: الحادّة
B الثالث: + من المقالة السادسة

وأمـا سـيـلان' المني وخـروجـه دائمـا ' بلا إرادة ولا شـهـوة ولا
 يكون من غــيـر إنعــاظ ع وإمـــا
 إلى يكون مـع " إنعــاظ " لكمّية المني إذا كثرت وإمّا لكيفيتههُ إذا صـار حارّا حريّفا ${ }^{17}$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { 'سيلان المني وخرجه: خروج المني وسيلانه OT } \\
& \text { ' } \\
& \text { Tالماسكة: الممسكة T } \\
& \text { T } \\
& \text { هوإمّا: + أن يكن }
\end{aligned}
$$

> D- :شبيه:
> B B A
> B- : إلى
> T'
> "مهع: من 0
> Tr
> B
> B الإمذاء: الأمر
> o الكففته: الكففة الاور


 مـثل السـمـّاق والخلّ القضيب والصلب ببعض الأدوية الباردة مثل ماء عنب الثـع الما 260 والبنج أو ماء الرجلة أو دهن الورد مـ المرداسنج والإسفيد الارديدا جـ



 الحمقاء.
"
ا'أن يغذى: - O
D واليطّيخ: + الصينيني
T- :والخلّ"
ويفترش: ويقصد B ويفرش O
O- : ويدمن أكل الشهـدانج
ا"البِّوط: + كلّ يوم أكل
B- في كـلّ يوم

" بماء البقلة الحمقاء: مـع ماء الرجلة B


درهمان يسقى بماء الرجلة المعصورةٌ
 شـهـوة الجمـاع أن " يؤخذ جلنار وبزر " رجلة وبزر خسّ وبزر
 السـذاب وبزر لسـان الحـمل من كلّ واحد مـثقــال تدقّ الأدويـة وتنخل ويسـقي منها ${ }^{1 \times}$ مثقـال على غ الريق بماء بارد أو يؤخذ

B ألشهدانج: الشاهدانق O + وبزر الرجلة Bo BO المعصورة: المعصور
"وإمذاء: واموا
or الرجل: الرجال
وَيخمّا: يجمدّ الرجال
B-
DT- و'وبزر رجلة:
"
T- :'وبزر الشبث"..مثقال
" منها: منه D
(على الريق: على ريق النفس O


 وجلنـار ِ درهـم يـدقّ وينـخل
 والأشربة الحارّة.

# الباب الرابع" في الاحتلام في النوم. <br> فأما الاحتلام في 「 النوم فليس يعرض للصبيان لأنّ علّ عرققهم 

> 'يدقّ: يدقّا T
> T
> O- : وخلّ
> ألمذي: المني
> أو ان ان
> 'وجلنار: + وزن نصف
> B- :وينخل : او
> ^الاستنقاع: الانتقاع BT الاستفراغ O
> "في الماء: بالماء 0
> B الُيجتب: ويتجنّب
> "الرابع: + من المقالة السادسة B1
> BT- الفي النوم:

رقيـقة فإذا بلغ الصبي وتولّدت
 لإخراج المادّهة إذا كثرت فيهم فتخرجها وْ بالاحتلام. وليس وقــــامـه عند ثقب لا المجـرى كـمـا ذكـرنا مـثـل مـا يـعـرض

 ذلك
 'رقيقة: منقبضة B دقيقة D「 خفيفة: وضيّقة B خيّقة
' O بحركة المادّة O Oتخرجها بالاحتلام: فيخرجها الاحتلام

T- وليس...الاحتلام:
**قب: نفس B
B
B- : من ذلك

" توق النفس: بالتوق B B
T
Trتتشوّ: تتوقا B

## 



نفسـه كائنّه يجامـعـها فيـحتلم. وذلك أن تخيّل النفس دائمـا يكون على ما عليـه حال البدن حتى أنّه قد يتخيّل الإنسان في


 أو كائنّه يعدو أو مـا أشبـه ذلك.



 كثيرا ${ }^{\wedge}$ ولم يعرض له ${ }^{\text {الجنابة. }}$

 الوركين والقضــيبّ "



> 'يحتلم: يحتمل B يحلم D

D

'
'كثر: يكثر
D
D- القضيب...أشبه: D'

'ويأكل...ذلك: - OT

الباردة مـثل الخسّ والرجلة والسـرمق والقر عوالبطيّيخ والقتّاء 310

علىى الفـرش


وقد يعرض في القضيب القروح

 320 مزاج العليل.

> فإن رأينا في القضيب قروحا من غير ورم عالجناه بهذا

Tالفرش الباردة: + الفرش الطري وما أشبهها
B-: ويشرب'

D يطلي: يضمدي
هْماء الورد: والماء المود B والماء ورد D + وما أشبه ذلك OT 'الخامس: + من المقالة السادسـة B
"القروع: القرح
^العلّة: الدوا
'الدواء: الدعا D + الذي نذكره الآن إن شاء اللّه تعالى D





 على حدّه ويخلط


T صفة دوا ينفع من أودام القضيب O وصفته D
"المحرّق: المحترق D
D مثقالين: مثقال
"مثقال: مثقالين
'القرح: القروح DT
D القرح: القروح:
O وشاذنج: وسادج ج
"فيسحق: + ذلك D
"ويخلط: ويخلطان

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { ^مـاء: بها } 0 \\
& \text { به: بها } \\
& \text { O- : لنا } \\
& \text { الأودام: ودم }
\end{aligned}
$$

 الفضّة وإسفيدا ج الرصـاص ومـرتك وشـياف مـاميثـا من كلّ




 تعالى.

وانتفاخه: يؤخذ من ورق الكرم ومن الكندر من كلّ واحد درهم 340 ومن الإســفـيـداج أربـــة دراهـم يسـحق ذلك بـالماء " ويطلى

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { 'الطلاء: الدوا } \\
& \text { O- وقد ...فحمدناه }
\end{aligned}
$$

ورصفته: صفة طلاء جيّد نافع O أخلاطه T

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { B } \\
& \text { Tويذاب: ويداف T T } \\
& \text { 'منه: به T } \\
& \text { التي: } \\
& \text { O- فإنَّه نافع: } \\
& \text { O- : صفة }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { O- : الـاء" }
\end{aligned}
$$

 يؤخذ بياض البيض ودهن الورد مـع شيء من زعفران أو مـرّ أحمر ويطلى به فإنّه نافع إن شاء اللّه تعالى.
 قضبـان الكرم من كلّ واحد جزء تسحقـهُ بماء وتضـعـه عليهـ فإنّه يقلعهُ وينقيه" ' إن شاء اللّه تعالى.

350 الباب السادس" في الأورام المتولّدة في الخصيتين.
 'منه: به B 'وينطل: ويطلا
الّلكت: من ذلك
DBT البثر: التوت O البثور
' يخرج: يجري "هذا: وهذه B هذه OT
^تسحقه: يسحق B B
" يقلعه: يقطعه B يبرئه O يتلعه
"
"السادس: + من المقالة السادسة
ro - -oوادّ من




 ناله" من ذلك.




$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { D لون الورم: الورم لونه } \\
& \text { 'حدّة: - حD } \\
& \text { 'سبب: بسبب D D } \\
& \text { D رضّ: رضّة } \\
& \text { D مخبر: يجد } \\
& \text { 'ناله: فاته D ياته } \\
& \text { D الحادث: الحار" } \\
& \text { B B في المذاكير: بدليل ما ذكرنا } \\
& \text { 'نظرنا: - O }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { "العليل: + في الابتداء D + بدء } \\
& \text { rأن: بأن } \\
& \text { آ العروق: الباسليق D }
\end{aligned}
$$

 بالأدوية المسـهلة. ثمّ يقصـد الورم بالأطلـية مثل أن يؤخذ ورق


 وماء ويلطخ على "الورم. أو يطبخ الباقلّى بشراب فيـى


 ويخلط بشيء من زيت الإنفاق ويطلى على الورم. أو يؤخذ ورق 370 ' 'على: في BDT 'دقيق: B
'على: به D
O فيطيخ: فيخلط O ويلزم: + به 0
Oيؤخذ شيء من: أو يطلا بشيء يؤخذ من O
"شقف: شقاف D

D- B المحرّق: المحترق"
BT

الكاكنج ' ودقيق الشـعير ومـخّ بيضـة ودهن ورد فيدبّر من ذلك طلاء ويستعمل إن شاء اللّه تعالى

 الأحـمـر وودق بنفسـج وصندل َ أحـمـر وصندل أبيض من كلّ 375 واحــد أربــــة دراهـم وأصل الخطمـي وبزر ِ الخطمي مـن كلّ واحـد خـمـســة دراهم وشــيـاف مــامـيــثـا ثلاثة دراهـم وقوق

 ويطلى على الودم ثلاثة مرّات بالنهـار " فإنّه نافـع إن شاء اللّه 380 تعالى.
'الكاكنع: البابنج
'OT-: :

T'
 סجريته: + أنا B + أخلاطه D + أنا وقد وجدته محمودا أخلاطه T
'وصندل..وبزر الخطمي: B'

مالخبيزی البرّي: الكبر النهري B النهري D
D- :
"'
"

فإن كان الورم بارد السبب أمرنا العليل أن يأخذ زبيـيا




 ويدقّ 1 و ويخلط مـــه مـَّ

'وكمّونا: وكثوتاتا D وكمّن كرماني وباقلّى T
'بماء: على صلاية
B أو يؤخذ: ويضاف إليه D
D- زنيب منزوع العجم:
T- D مسلوق: مسحوقا
"
د دقيق الترمس: إكليل أو يؤخذ دقيق الترمس B
"به: + الويضمّ: ويطلى O O
"بالميختج: بالميتختج BO بربِ العنب D
D- "و
D-:
(أو ...به: -

أبيض مـدقوق ويضـمّد به. ومن ذلك صفـة طلاء لودم المذاكير 390
 باقلّى ودقيق حمّص وبابونج من كلّ واحد أربـعة مثاقيل وكندر


 المذاكير فإنّه نافع ^ُ إن شاء اللّه تعالى.

## الباب السابع ${ }^{\text {ف }}$

إذا حدث " في الخصيـتين قـرح " مـتنفّطة فينبـني أن يؤخن o من المقل: شيء من الفلفل
"الميختج: الميتختج BO + وهو الربّ المتّخذ من العنب O
'- من البرد: O

B B الفضول: والسعول: 'الغليظة: + أخلاطه T- جلنار
D هنْ درهم: خمسة دراهم
D- "وشمع . .بمیخ"
OT بـحْ
O جيّد نافع مجربّ D D
الالسايع: + من المقالة السادسة B
"حدث: حصل T الحن:

لذلك من الطـين الذي يقال له قيمـوليـا فيسـحق بـالماء سـحقا' 400

 دهـن الورد ويطلـى منـهُ القــروح. أوْ يـؤخــــذ رمـــــاد حطب الكرم فــــســــحق بماء ونـطرون ويـلـلى بـه الموضـع، أو يؤخـذ مـرداسنـج فيســحق مـع إقليمـيـا الفـنـّة ودهن



 D قروح متنفّطة: قروح واكال وحكة

D- :سحقا'
T- أو ...بماء: آ
"'م: مرح D 'منه: به
D- أو . .تعالى
Tودهن...الموضع: ويطلى به مع دهن المود
"وهو مجربّ: -D + أخلاطه B

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { B- الموضع:...تعالى: الموهي: } \\
& \text { D الحادّة: الحادثة } \\
& \text { T ولا سيّما: - سيّما } \\
& \text { "إذا: اما D D }
\end{aligned}
$$

 وأقـاقيـا وبزر ع ودد من كلّ واحد وزن درهمـين، تسـحق الأدويـة
 منه فإنّه نافع إن شـاء اللّه تعالى.
 مـجرّب": يؤخـذ من الإســفـيـدا جـ سـتّة دراهـم ومن الكبـريت 415 الأصـفر وذن درهمـين ومن الأفيـن درهـم فيسـحق بطلاء" أو



$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { DT المخّ البقري: متخّ البقر }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { B }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { (ويزر: ودهن } \\
& \text { D- : اليابسة: } \\
& \text { D ويدبرّ: ويدر D } \\
& \text { Tمرهم: درهم D مرهما D } \\
& \text { ^للأنثيين: في الأنثيين درهي } \\
& \text { D- : وهو } \\
& \text { B Bجرّب: + جيّد أخلاطه } \\
& \text { " } \\
& \text { T'فيسحقان: فيسحق آل }
\end{aligned}
$$

ثمّ يذرّ من ذلك على الجـرح. فإن كان فيـها راتينج ${ }^{\text {T }}$ ويطلى به الموضع فإنّه جيّد نافع إن شاء اللّه تعالى.

## الباب الثامنْ في الفتوق والأدرة المتولّدة٪ في الخصيتين



 السـعال الشـديد أو الصياح القوي أو الوطء على الامتـلاء أو الصــراع على " مــثل ذلك أو من رطوبة مــزلقــة ' أرخت الا Tr

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { 'يذرّ: يذرا } \\
& \text { r' } \\
& \text { B } \\
& \text { عيداف: فيذاب }
\end{aligned}
$$

ه هامن: + من المقالة السادسة B
D- المتولّدة:

Tالمراقيّة: المترقية
B فلن: فلا
O- على:
B مزلقة: + لزجة"

العـضـو حـتى خــلا مـوضــعــه وأخـذ مـكانا آخـر 'ليس له 430 بخـرقـة ${ }^{\text {الح }}$ لن خلو من عــصــبــهو لن "' ينبت ولن الفـتق مـا يكون خـفـيـفــا ${ }^{10}$ يردّه $17{ }^{17}$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { الأرخت: جذبت B وجب D } \\
& \text { ا'آخر: + غير مكانه } \\
& \text { ' بخرقة: لخرقة } \\
& \text { "الحاجز: المتاخر D } \\
& \text { " } \\
& \text { O- " }
\end{aligned}
$$

D انخرق: يخرق D
" مُما خلو: ما خلق BDT " 'لم ينبت: ولبث B لم يثبت D ان يثبت DT

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { "ولن: ولا B ولم D وان T } \\
& \text { B-: إلا } \\
& \text { BT- - ألأل: }
\end{aligned}
$$

B'
B- - خفيفا
"

لانقـبـاض أطراف الأعـصــاب والصــفـاقـات وبخـاصـّـــ' في 435 الصبيان
فإن كان الفتق في ذوي الإنسان فينبغي أن يؤمروا بترك
 السكون

 تمنــهـه' التــزيّد . ويلطخ مـع ذلك تحت D
" النزيَدْ: الترقد
'وبخاصّة: وخاصةّ
0- :والتعب"
B والحركات المعنفة O - O
B السكفن:السبق
الفتق: + أبدا
T- إمَا
B يلزممه...خرق: ويلزمه أبدا العصائب بخرق
"خرق: خضرق
B' ${ }^{\text {T }}$
"حشوها: حشو
D
T'تمنعه: تمنعها
 الوقت والمرّو والكندر الذكر والحضض والز والمفران والأقاقيـا وعصـارة 445 الطراثيث ومققل اليهود ${ }^{\vee}$ وما شابه ذلك

 إلا القليل منها ويصعب علاجه عند ذلك ولم أر الأطبّاء يعالجن ذلك بشيء أكــذــر 「
(rتص: بحيث D
'تنجاز: تنحدر
Or الوقت بعد الوقت: ليس تبعد لوقت B

هئَتْذذ: خذ D
O والمرّ: والكَّنز
الطراثيث: الشهانيث

D- إليه... والحركات
'هإنّ: كان

"مانع: - مانعا

"'يسقى: + هاحب ذلك D

وتحلّل رياحـهـا


 455 الغليظة المولّدة للريا ح.
فمن ^ ذلك صفة ضمـاد نافع للفتق والمذاكير على نسخـة
 وصقق ' السرو ومرّ وعنزروت وغرى السمك من كلّ واحد جزء

" أدوية: من الأدوية التي
'رياحها: رياحه O
rernax
「「الأفاويه: الأفاوي D
O فيطلونه: ويطلوه D فيطلونها الغاونا
B- :تقلّص:
'ويمنعونه: ويمنعوه B ويمنع D وتمنعه T الا
D الأغذية: الأطعمة
D- فمن ذلك: الشا
B
O-D ونوق السرو: وورقه" OT ويداف: ويذاب"
D. : $\alpha^{1 r}$




 للاســتـرخـاء" ${ }^{\prime}$

'صفة: T-
آخرى: ضماد O اخر T
'وقشثر: وقشور B
ـخلّ: + وخمر D

B الخصيتين: المذاكير والخصيتين
T دياسقوريدوس: دياسقوريدس B ديسقوريدوس D ديسقوريدس
الفتق: الفتوق
D الأعضاء: الأعصـاب
أرختها: أدركتها
OT يلفني: ينقيّي"
T
D الأعضاء: الأعصـاء
"'غيرها: يحرما الاعفا

 بيـيـاض البيض ويطلى على الأنثـيـين فـإنّه نافع إن شــاء اللّه تعالى.
صفـة دواء نافع من الأدرة وقد جـرّبته مرارا فـحمدتهُ:
 وكندر ْ وزعفران وعنزروت وكثيـرا ودم الأخوين من كلّ واحد 475 نصـف والخلّ" حـتى يصـيـر مـرهمـا ويطلى منه فـإنّه نـافع مـجـرّب".

B فعل: مثل B

T صفة أخرى تتفع من الأرة:" صفة اطلية نافعة باذن اللَّه من الادرة T

D- :واحد
B BT

D- :نصف:
"يدقّ" + ذلك O
وينخل: + ويسحق BD
B- :ويعجن"
 "من الأدرة: الأدرة D أدرة D

الكور ' فــينقع في الطلاء ويســحق ويطلى 480 فإنّه نافع جيّ إن شاء اللّه تعالى.

الباب التاسع في احتباس الطمث


 ويحتبس في أبدانهنّ رطوبات كثيرة، ثمّ تنزل تلك الرطوبات إلى أسفل البطن وتخرج منهنّ كمّا يخرج من الشجرة فضول

ا'ألتي تصيب: - O
"
'الكور: الخوز B المقل D

'علمى البيضة: -
B التاسع: + من المقالة السادسة
T-: سنـة
T- سنة
BD الذكو, الذكران
وعلّة: وذلك T
T- الطمث: الشا
"أنْ: فی
 يخرج فضـول أبدان النساء فإن تغيّر عليهنّ شيء من فيض الطمث وزيادته وارتفاعه واحتباسـه عرض لهنّ من ذلك أدواء 490 كثيرة مختلفة.
فـأماء احتبـاس الطمث فيكون على وجهين: إمّا بالطبع وإمّا بالعرض. فالذي يكون بالطبع فمثل الذي يكون عند بلوغ
 ستّين سنة ومن بعضهنّ عند بلوغ خن خمس وتلثين سنة ولا سيّما 495




> D بالصموغ: وهي الصموغ '

> فأفما إحتباس الطمث: فخرج الطمث D D O وكثر شحمها: وكثر عليها الشحم
> 'نأما: + ما كان
> V فإذا: فإنّه إذا
> 'العضو: الفضول
> هو: هو D-B

 قبل العرقق التي فيها . أمـا من قبل جسم الرحم فإن كان كثيفا



 لكيفيتها وإمّا لحركتها . أما لكمّيتها إذا كانت قليلة وقا وقلّتها


"بالعرض: + وأمـا من قبل العروق التي في الرحم إذا كانت ضـيّقة إمّا بالطبع T وإمَّا بالعرض
من: + قبل
"سدد: شدّة O
"
-أَأو لكيفيتها وإمّا لحركتها: -
"وقلَّتها: ومكثها

 الخفض والدعة ويكثرن الاككل فهنّ محتجات إلى كثرة إنزا 510


 يابسا لم يسلك في العروق سلوكا سلسا . فأما احتباسه بحركة



> D التي: الواتي B الاتي' '
'ويكثرن: ويكثرن B
"لهنّ: لهم B بهنَ O

B- النساء...الطمث: المث
'الاتي: التي
Tالخفض: الحفظ T
^لكيفية: بكيفية D
d
o سد": شد"
O- : وكذلك....سلسا"
D
أأو ..الدم من: D-

ترعف كثيـيـرا أو منهنّ من تنزف ' الدم مـن علّة البـواســيـر، ومنهنّ منها 520
 وقد يفسد طمث المرأة أيضـا الحزن الدائم والهمّ الدائم



 أغذية رديئة مثل الفحم والتراب 「 وما أسبه ذلك. وقد يعرض


A شثبه الغضب والفزع: شبه أنواع الفزع والغضب
T
'تطاول: طال T"
D الغثيان:الغشيان
" والتراب: + والطين D D
 والرأس والعـينينَ وقـد يــرض لهنّ


 المرّة السوداء
وقــد ذكــر روفس الحكيم احتباس الطمث هان عليه علاجهـ بأيسر الوجوه. فينبـغي أن يداوي احتبـاس الطمث بإزالة الاسبـاب المولّلدة له. ونبدأِّ من 535 عـلاج ذلك بفـصــد المرأة في الرجـل في ' الحـــرق المســمّى
'وصفنا: ذكرنا D

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { O- :والعينين } \\
& \text { " }
\end{aligned}
$$

في الجملة: بالجملة O


「السوداء: الصفراء

'ونبدأ : وابتداء
D العرق B- :فـى العرق وندي"

الصــافن، فـإنّ الفـصـــ في ' الرجل مـَ إلى ضـدّ الجهة التي يميلّ إليها نقد


 بالحجـامـة" 'في الكعب من إحدى " "الرجلين واسـتـفـرغنا منا من
 الرجل الأخرى مثل ذلك.

'في: من
'r '
 "توجّهنا: توبينا؟ B ترجيّنا D توحينا
'إلى فعله: أن نفعل ذلك B أن نفعله T
D- المرأة. وقد تقوم
D في ذلك: وبذلك
B فصدنا: فصـناه ويدكاه
'بالحجامة في الكعب: بحجامة الكعب D بالحجامة الكعب T D- :إحدى
"أيضا: الصافن D
Tآفندمـا: أدذمـا B أندنمـا؟ T
 وكانت ${ }^{\text {T }}$ هذه الدلائل استفرغ منها من الدم في في ثلاثة أيام، أما في الما اليوم الأول فمقدارْ رطل ونصف وأمـا في اليوم الثاني فرطل وأمـا
 بدنها إلى سخنته " الطبيعي في أيام يسيرة.
وقد يدرّ الطمث في بعض النسـاء من غيـر هذا التدبيـر



$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { O- فعله: O } \\
& \text { 'كان: كانت D } \\
& \text { D- آ احتبس عنها } \\
& \text { D- }{ }^{\text {' }} \\
& \text { الهزال: النزال } \\
& \text { B Bمقدار: بمقدار } \\
& \text { 'سخنته: سخونته } \\
& \text { DT بالفوذنج: فإنٌ الفوذنج O الفوذنتج } \\
& \text { T النهري: البري } \\
& \text { D }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { T ونرّار: ويختلطا D ونثرا }
\end{aligned}
$$

العـسل' . وأفــضل أوتـات شـرب هذا الدواء بـعـد الخـروج من 555



 وقد " تسقى النساء في مثل هذا الحـال إيارج فيقرا ولا 560


'العسل: + وشرب O
r
'
'ويؤمر>ن>: وتؤمر BT ويئمرنز DO
DOT ويسقين: ويسقون
'خروجهنّ: خرجهم OT الخروج D D
D المرّ: مرّ القشر

T- O مدافا: جدّا D مذابان

> " بمداء: + فاتر أو BT

D البالدار: من الدار"
O وتسقى: ويسقى لهن
B B الأنيسون: + وإذخر

والنانخواه والسنبل والسليخة وفقاح ' الإزخر وما أشبـه ذلك

 دهن الناردين خـمســـة دراهم ومن القتّةٌ نصف درهـم ويخلط

 أبهل وأنيسون وتسقى ' من هذه الأدوية. فمن " ذلك صــفـة مطبـون ينزل " الطمث ويؤخـن في كلّ 570
 D وفقاح: وتفاح
'أو تسقى: ويسقون o
「مماء: ماء DO
Tتلاثة: بثلاث T
oأواق: + ماء T
"القنّة: اللفت 0

$$
\text { تسقى: يسقوا } 0
$$

^من: + هذا o

Tالدحمرتا: راحمرته O الدرحمريا
"وتسقى: + لهنّ o
"- فمن ذلك
D "
B-



 سليخة ونداوند طويل وجنطيانا وحبّ الرند وداونـ الاوند شـامي من
 رطلين، ثمٌ يطبن طبـنـا أواق بدهن اللوزين إن شاء اللّه تعالى ، صفـة "طبيخ الأصـين


B- والأسطوخودوس والفراسيون'
BT والكمادريوس: والكمافيطوس
'
ونانخواه: نانحه O

D هوبز جزر برّي: ودقوا


DO طبخا خفيفا: طبخة خفيفة
"
"
"المدر": المدرّة D
"

ومشكطرامشـير' خمـسـة مـثـاقيل وأنيسـون ثلاثة مـثاقيل
 مثاقيل ودوقوا「 خمسـة مثا ومصرّ $585{ }^{\circ}$ وركى ثلاثة مثاقيل وفراسيون وفوذنج جبلي ونانخول



 صـفـة ســـوف ألّفـه" "إسـحق بن عـمـران " اللنسـاء 590

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { 'ومشكطرامشير: ومشكطرامش وهي الاله O } \\
& \text { أَصل: أصهل B } \\
& \text { 'ودوقوا خمسـة مثاقيل: - OT } \\
& \text { B- أُ أحمر } \\
& \text { 0ْنانخواه: نانخه } \\
& \text { 'يطبخ: يجمع ويطبخ B + ذلك O + الجميع T } \\
& \text { " } \\
& \text { "يققى: + منه D } \\
& \text { "وحلو: ودهن لوز حلو D } \\
& \text { "مثقال: درهم D } \\
& \text { "الألفّه: اللفه DO } \\
& \text { "- بن عمران: }
\end{aligned}
$$






 جميع الأدوية يدقّ وينخل ويلتّ التربد وحده بأوقية ونصف دين دن
 طبخ فيه فوذنج ونمام وأنيسون وبزر كرفس تشربه يوما وتغبّه

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { 'الاتي: الواتي B الذين D } \\
& \text { O-: } \gamma^{\gamma} \\
& \text { D } \\
& \text { O وايارح DT ولرياح: ولأرياح: } \\
& \text { O الفضل: الفضنل } \\
& \text { الغليظ: + أخلاطه B } \\
& \text { و ويزر: وأصل } \\
& \text { O- وأفسنتين رومي: وأحي } \\
& \text { D وفقاح: وتفا } \\
& \text { 'مثقال: مثقالين المتا } \\
& \text { O- الوز . . فوذنت } \\
& \text { T'بماء: + فاتر T }
\end{aligned}
$$ صـــنــة حبّ


 جرّبته" وحمـدته' ': يؤخذ من إيارج الفيقر الفـرا المعمـول بالصبر

 وسكبينج ومقل أزرق وجندبادستر من كلّ واحد نصف مثقال

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { 'آخر: آخرا برا D أخرى O ابدا } \\
& \text { Trتمتمّه: تتقيه D يستفصله ؟ }
\end{aligned}
$$

'
ج
DO ألّلته: ألْفتها B أللفته DO
'
"
^البرد والفضول الفليظة: البرد الغليظ O
"جربّته: جرّبتها
'وحمدته: فحمدتها O- O وأخلاطه O
"السقطري: السقوطري
T- :'r
O- اتصبين:
D- : وششق:

وقشـر سليـخة وأبهل وبزر’ رازيانج عريض وأنيسـونَّ وبزر



 قدر قوّة شاربه ويشرب بماء قد طبخ فيه فوذنج ونمام إن شاء اللّه تعالى.

 تسقى وزن " نصف درهـم من قشـور السليخـة مـسـحوقـا"


 وقصب الذريرة إذا شـرب واحتـمل أدرّ الطمث وإذا قطـرّر في



 وتنخل " وتعجن بدهن سوسن ويستعمل. أو " يؤخذ أفسنتين 625 ومرّ فيدقّان " ويـجنـنان بدهن سوسن ويعمل من ذلك شيـار
'
B محرّقا بعسل تشرب منه: المحرّق يشرب بالعسل تشرب منه B B
r'بندقة: الحائضة
D الحيضة: الحيض:
T- أو ...الطمث:
D" تحدر: تدر"
Trتَّذ: ينحدر
هوالقنطويون: والقنطرن B والقنطريون D
B
T- :وتنخل"
T- أو . .ويستعمل
"

ويستعمل. أو ' يؤخذ نطرون وزوغا من كلّ واحد جزء فيدقّان


 المرأة نقّى الرحم وأدرّ الطمث إن شاء الـاء اللّه تعالى.




T من ذلك شثـافـ ذ
T
D ويعمل...شيار: ويتّخذ شيارا معجونا سوسن ويستعمل D
T T شيار: شيافا
'الققر: الأتن B التين T
واحتملته: وتحتمله العنه
"هذا: هذه BT
'الذي: الذ التي
O الذكرنا: ذكرناه
Tr Tأمرنا: + العليل T T
T"
T- :فتخلط
 ويستعمل ". أو يؤخذ مـرِ أحمر وشـونيـز وفوذنتج من كلّ واحد 635 جـزء، يدقّ ذلك وينخل ويعـجن بـشـراب طـيّبُ الريـح ويعـملْ
 أن تـهـن المرأة فم الرحم بـدهـن الســــوسـن أو بــهـهـن الورد
 جرح
 أن يؤخذ بـابونج ومـرزنجـوش 「 وإكليل الملك وسليخـة وشـبثّ

DT شيار: شيافا B شيارا
'أو . .
T- 'ويستعمل...بشراب:
"
O ويعمل. .ويستعمل: ويستعمل شيار
T شيار: شياف B شيارا
الفروج: الفرج BT الفروجة BT
ثئلا: لكيلا
OT جُ جرح: خرا:
"آنفا: + وهي B
D
r ومرزنجوش: ومزنجوش D

وأنيسـون وقصب الذريرة وأصل السوسن وفوذنتج وسـذاب ومـا


 التـي ${ }^{\text {ط }}$

 التي 「"تدرّ الطمث وتعيده إلى الإعتدال إن شاء اللّه تعالى. 650
" وشبث": وشب o
'في الماء: بماء B
'ناعما: -
「القدر: القدح B
التي: الذي o

$$
\text { oنيها: فيه } 0
$$

'الأدوية: العقاقير o

T جيدّا O ناعما D
و وتتقب: وتنقب B ثمّ تثقب O
وسط الغطاء: ذلك الغطاء O في وسطها والغطاء O
"ثقبة: نقبة B ثقبا في وسطه O
"
T- :جميع"
T- التى

الباب العاشر’ في النزف العارض للنساء
 الآلة إذا انفـتـحت عروق الرحم أو تصـدّعت وْ ويكون خـروجـه

 وإمّا لأنّ كِيفيتها لانـها تكون حـادّةٌ لإفـراط الحـدّة في الام فـلا يحتمـل الرحم "
 وإن كانت بلـمـانية كان النزف أبيض وإن كانت دمـوية كان 660
'العاشر: + من المقالة السادسة B '

"
O Oتصد"عت: انصدعت
" صافيا: قانيا
T- : إلمّا
" "الأن": أن O

النزف أحـمر. وإنّمـا يكون هــا الضـربُ من النزف إذا فـسـد
 عروق الطمث وأفـرط عـرض للمــرأة رداءة اللون وودم الرجلين ولا ينضـج طعـامـها إلا نضـجا ضـعيفا 665 ولا تشـتهي الطعام ويذبل
 انفجار الام ' وتضعف أفعالها .

 'الضرب من: 'د
'

O عروق الأعضـاء لفسـاده: لاتساع الفاسدة B لاستبشاع الأعضـاء الفاسدة Tاتساع الأعضناء له لفساده
'نزف: دم D + دم OT

T خمعيفا: خفيفا
ثتبرد: تعرض 0

B' الدم: الطم الطمث:
" من علاج: بعلاج
T'بفصد: أن يفصد B بأن نفصد T


 المطبوخات والمعجونات وكذلك
 675 الكيموس وإنزاله .

"المرأة في: -O
B أعالي: أعلى
B اليجذب: فيجذب: أيجي
'وذلك إذا: ذلك فإذا
r
ع
º
'وكنلك إن: فإن O
O
^بدفع: لنفع DT التي تنفع O
Tوانزاله: واخراجه D وأنزلناه O في انزاله T
"تمادى: تاذت D عاد D
"النزف: المرأة من النزف D D
r'العليل: العلاج OT

بالأدوية التي تحـبس الام بعـد أن تشـدّ أعضــاء المرأةٍ شـدّا






 وشـراب الآس وشـراب السفرجل وشـراب الحصـرم ومـا أشـبـه 685
 الام وفي بـاب إسهال الدم.

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { T- المرأة } \\
& \text { r } \\
& \text { الالدم: الورم B } \\
& \text { ؤوالبسد: والشبث D والسك؟ O }
\end{aligned}
$$


" Bبزر: وحبّ

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { T وحبّ الآس B - المحرّق: } \\
& \text { D } \\
& \text { مؤلّفة: مركّبة } 0
\end{aligned}
$$

T يعالجوا D يتالجن: يعالج

وينفع باذن اللّه من نزف دم ' الحيض المفرط أن يـر ئخـذ

 وينفع من ${ }^{\text { }}$ الحــــــاء مـع بعض هـه الأدوية القـابضــة وتكونْ الأغـنـية


 والإطرية والأرز والدخن ومـا أشـبـه ذلك وتأكل من " الفـاكهــة
'دم الحيض: الدم
"
م'
B- :أن تسقى
O وتكون الأغذية: ويكون الغذاء O
"
D
Tاليمام: + والخريق وران
o والفراريج: والخرف
T سلائقا O سالئق D مسلوقة: مساليق'
B الخل: خلّ خمر
D-


 700 والآس والمرد ${ }^{〔}$ وما أشبه ذلك .
 تـتّ كلّ ثـدي ويكثـــر المصّ بـلا
 صوفة"
وزعم دياســــــوريـوس " أنّ النارديـن إذا عــمـل منـه 705

D- الرمَّن. .وقشور

Tو والفشّال: D- والعسال

Tالمحاجم: المجاج O المحادي 'بالا شرط: بغير تشريط O


ألام: البن
"
T ديسقوريدس D دي ديسقوريدس: ديسقوريدوس
"فرزجة: فروح or

## 


 710 صوفقة" الكندر فيسخق ذلك ويعجن بخلّ وتحتمله" المرأة في

 عروق " في الأرحـام أو في الكلى، تسـحق وتـــــمل فـي القـبل 715

 خمر وقرطاس محرّق ودم الأخوين وسـمّاق وجفت اللبّوط وطين أرمني وصــمغ عـربي وشـبّ مـقلو ورامك عـفـــصـي واحـد وزن مثثقال وعـصــارة لحيـة التيس وزن درهـم وكافـور 720


 أَقراص: اقرصة O


ش

'
O- وتنخل: O
D- : الدنانير

"'وتحتمل: وتتحمل DO
"البلح: + فى D

فـرزجـة أو تتّـخـن منهـا شـــــافـة ' فـتـغــمس في دهـن الورد $725{ }^{\text {² }}$ منها في المنخريـن في مـاء اللبح ومـاء الــاذروج للرعـاف شاء اللّه.
صــفـة ســهـوف يـطـع الدم من يؤخذ ود ع مـحرّق وقـرن إيّل مـحرّق من كلّ واحــ وذن أربعـة مـثـاقـيل
 مثقال وأكثر مـع بـض الأشربة المقبّضـة "إن شاء اللّه تعالى 'شيافة: أشيافة D شياف O B الحبل: الحبل: الح ' o
o-: : 0 0
o من النزف: والنزف o
'مجرّب: + أخلاطه B
^مثاقيل: دراهم T T
وبسد: وسك T- O
B- :أبيض"
"ويشخل: + ويعجن

「المقضّضة: القاضة D + فانّه حد

## الباب الحادي عشر’ في اختناق الرحم




 السقم تقبّضت حتى تضـ وجهها بين ركبتيها . وقد ذكر جالينوس أنّه شـاهد امرأة وقد عرض لها هـا 740 السقم وسقطت " 'نفسها" وسقطت مجستّها " كأنّها ميّتـة

B' عشر: + من المقالة السادسة
'إنّه: ان D
T الخناق: اختناق الرحم
'في: من OT
B الأرحام: الرحم
أبدانهنّ: أقدامهنّ
"
"
T- هذا السقم:
DT وسقطت: وسقط
"
r'raتّها: + ووجدها B

إلا أنّها مـخالفة للموتى ' بما فيها من حرارة يسيرة في في وسط

 745 تتنفّس وأنّ كلّ متنفّس حيّ






D- :للموتى'
rتتفّس: + أم لا D D
أَنفها: نفسـها
D- من المرأة:
O وفساد منيّها: وفساده فيها
D- فإنّه . . .ذلك:
D لاللأرامل: + ويعرض
DT كانوا: كان

rir الرجل: الرجال O البعل D D
 كما يحتاج الرجال وهذه من أعمـال الطبيعة فإذا عدمت المرأة


 الصوت يعرض لهنّ الخنق كما بيّنا .



D بخار بارد: بخارا باردا D
D حجاب: محلب
ألتنّس: النفس DOT
DO الأرحام: الرحم:
"ريو: بوع؟ الارحو
'ولاتُصال: لاتصّصال BDT
Tالحلق: -B بالقلب Tا


 760 الأرحامَّ بقوّة شديدة وخاصّةّة في الحريف أو في الشتاء



 والحتّاءّ والقطران والصـوف المحـرّق ودخان السـراج المطفـأ 765

B الحيضة: طمثهن
B- :"فإن...طمثهن" طن" 'فني: من BDT
Tالأرحام: الرحم

D يْنبي أن نبدأ: يستعمل ويبدأ
B من: + قبل
or
Tالحيض: او احتباس الحيض
T يدا: يد BO ثـي D T T

DT ورجليها" 0 O وجلاها: ورجلها
"جيّدا: شديدا
T أشياء: أيضا
"الحنّاء: -O والقنّة DT

 أسـفلها بـأشيـاء طيّبـة الرائحـة ${ }^{\circ}$ مثثل العود والمسك والقسط






 ذكـرنـا من بماء الكرفس الرطب أو تسـقى من شــراب الفـوذنـج أو إيارج فـيـــرا مـع ع الأفـسنتـين أوْ تسـقـى وزن درهـم من الغـاريقـون مـع شراب رفيع"، ويؤخذ لها أفسنتين وأصل الإذخر وبابونج


o
D
D الرحم: الرجل
T- :من'
'وتسقى: ويسقون T
8T مـع: + ماء
T- :أو . أفسنتينين
رفيع: دقيق
Tوشيح: + محرّق
ومرزنجوش: ومردقوش OT وشب": وشبت
"به: - T- فم
"


## على نحو' ما ذكرنا في ${ }^{\text { هذه المقالة. }}$





 الأبيض والقسط والمرّ والأفيفن من كلّ واحد وذن مثقال، يدقّ

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { D الألدوية: هذه الأدوية } \\
& \text { ألحيضة: الحيض } \\
& \text { 'نحو: حال O } \\
& \text { 'في: من } \\
& \text { 'وزكر: وقد ذكر D } \\
& \text { D ألقابلة: المفردة }
\end{aligned}
$$

O دواء ينفع لاختناق الرحم: دواء مقابل للاختناق ألليي يعرض في الأرحام D
Tالهوامّ: الحيوان T
Tالقتّلة: القاتة O القتال
D وللأرواح الصعبة: للأرواح الطبيعية D DT- :وهو جيّة
 "الشيكران: الشكران B الشوكران DT Or متاقيل: دراهم


جمـيع' ذلك ويصبّ عليـه شـراب حلو ثلاثة' أواق، ثمّ يسـخن في الشمس ويترك فيها إلى أن يجمد ويتّخذ منه بنادق بقدر 790
 شراب حلو إن شاء اللّه.






T- تثاثلة...في الشمس
D- المصري: الانهي الم
T- امنـه
B عشر: + من المقالة السادسـة B
'الأورام: أمراض
"منه: منها
ح
"
"
B- :فضل....عن: ونا"
(غانیظ: غلیظة D

سـوداوي، ومنه مـا يتـولّد عن ' ريح غليظة عـسـرة الانفـراج

 ذلك وجع في ${ }^{\text {القبل شديد مـ }}$

 وإن كان الورم في جانب الرحم المؤخّر اتبّع "ّ ذلك وجع شديد في الظهر واحتباس الطبيعة وألمڭ غفيما دون الشراسيف. 805
"اتِّع: تبع B
'وجع: + في B

BTO والمعدة: والمقعدة"
"القابلة: + فيه O

O منطبقا: منطبقة D مطبقا

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { آاتّبع: تبع B } \\
& \text { 'وألم: + فيها }
\end{aligned}
$$

 دمـوي كان مـع مـا قـدّمنا حـمّى حـارّة



 يتدارك
 815 وضيق صدر مـع استرخاء وضفف المدن

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { 'الورم متولّدا : تولّد الودم O } \\
& \text { 'حارَة: حادّة } 0 \\
& \text { 'ويتبع: وتبع B } \\
& \text { D- ؤقلق: ون } \\
& \text { O-: } 0 \\
& \text { 'ويتبع: وتبع B } \\
& \text { D } \\
& \text { لـوركين والمتن: inv. DT في الكتفين والوركين O } \\
& \text { B يدرك D } \\
& \text { D D الملائم: الدائم } \\
& \text { "المعدة: المقعدة B }
\end{aligned}
$$


 البرهان الذي قدّمنا وكان






$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { 'بأن: بعد أن B ف- T } \\
& \text { 'الحرّ: الحرارة B } \\
& \text { BT وكان: + }
\end{aligned}
$$

D- المرأة
BD- فی:
T- وذلك:
OT والسنّ: + والعادة
^َإنّه: ان D
T
Tالواتي: الذي D الذين O اللاتي D
"بهن: بهم D
O
rأكثر من ما ينتفعن بغيره: ينتفعن أكثر من غيره O
 يحــبس ع الطمـثْ


 مـرّة فـي اليـوم ثمّ نــاودهـا ${ }^{10}$ من الغـد . ثمّ تســى
'منابض: مابض DO نض T
'「في علل الرحم: مما D D "آفة: انه D
Tي يحبس: يحتبس
Tالطمث: للطمث D دم الطمث T

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { 'بجذبه: بجبذه الطد } \\
& \text { "الدم: الفم D } \\
& \text { "ضد": حد D } \\
& \text { " منها: + الدم } \\
& \text { "أَعني: أعين D } \\
& \text { O- من: } \\
& \text { "انفي: ب-B }
\end{aligned}
$$

B Br
B- : لها ${ }^{18}$
D T نعاودها من الغد: يشده ايضا
D- :تسقى"
 من


 وتسـقاهُ، أو تسـقى مطبوخ الخـيـار شنبـر أو مطبـوخ العناب 835 والمخيطا، فإنّ هذه الأدوية ومـا أشبهها تزيل الحرارة والحدّة من الورم.
 التي تردع وتقوّي الحضو مثل" البقلة الحمقاء وعنب الثطلب
'تنفع: تنتفع بها
'rن الأودام: للأوام B
ס-: من:

D- "
D- : منقّى من قصبه وحبّه

خ خمسة دراهم: خمسون درهما

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { D وتسقاه: ويسقى } \\
& \text { "مـع: بعد } \\
& \text { "مثل: مع T }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { ' } \\
& \text { "دراهم: درهما }
\end{aligned}
$$

وحيٌ العـالمُ وبزر قطونا ومـاء لسـان الحمـل ومـاء الهندباء مـع 840

 الرحم بياض اليض ودهن الودد وشحم الإوز وشحم الدجاج. فإن كانت الحرارة في الودم مفرطة عالجناه بضـماد متّخن من الون دهن الورد وماء الكزبرة الرطبة وماء عنب الثعلب وماء الهندباء 845

 صوفات إلى داخل.
 بيعض " الأشياء المحلّاة مثل أن يؤخذ ورق الكرنب أو الهندباء 850

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { D- :' } \\
& \text { BD-: }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { T- وْيضمدّ ...المرد: الون } \\
& \text { "مع: ب } 0 \\
& \text { T ويستدل D } \\
& \text { T } \\
& \text { ز، زال: كان } 0 \\
& \text { O- عند ذلك: }
\end{aligned}
$$

"بيعض الأثـياء: بالأشياء D

فيدقّ دقّا’ ناعما ويقطرّ عليه دهن الورد أو دهن البنفسِج وتحتمله 「 المرأة بصوفةّ وحلبة ويطبتخ طبخا جيّدا بالغا حتى يصير مثل ماء ${ }^{\circ}$ الثـعير



المرأة في قبلها . أو يؤخذ إكيل الملك فيطبِخ ثمّ يدقّ ويخلط
بماءّ'عنب الثعلب ودهن الورد وبياض اليض وتي وتحتمل في القبل ني صوفة.
وزعم دياســـقــوديدوس "' أنّه إذا طبـخ النـارديـن بالماء
 D- : دقّا
'وتحتمله: وتتحمله O
'بصوفة: في صوفة O- أوخطمي:
Oماء الشعير: العسل 0 OT المخالة D D الثخانة: النخاقير الـة D
ليداف: يذاب o

ويغمس: ويعصر
D ويخلط: ويحلى
"بماء: مع ماء"
T دياسقوريدوس: ديسقوريدوس D ديسقوريدس


ينفع' من الأودام الحارّةَّ العارضة للأرحام. صفة الفرزجة الزعفرانية ذكر بولس الطبيب أنّها تصا تصلح





 الكفاية من دهن المود ويستعمل من خارج ويحتمل في صوفة فإنّه نافع مجرّب إن شاء اللّه تعالى.

> "
> "
> 'ينفع: -
> "الحارةّ: الحاددّة B

> (وجسائه: وخشونته الحادن
> T
> 'ومخّ: ومن B شحم
> D هونوفا: ورق ما D
> o ويداف: ويذاب
> B-:

فإن كان الورم باردا غليظا ودلّ على ذلك' الثقل مـع قلّة

 الحلبة وبزر الكتّان وإكيل الملك والنعنع والنمـام والمرزنجوش


 الأصـل بدهن اللوزين أو تسـقى ז' مطبـو



السـوسن وتستـعمل المراهـم المحلّلة وتغذى ' بالأغذية اللطيفة 880 التي لا تولد الفضنل في أبدانهنّ. فإذا علمنا أنّ الودم قد جمع المدّة فينبني لنا ألا أن نستعمل
 الضـماد المتّخذ من الحلبة وبزر الكتّان ودقيق الشـي الشـير ودقيق




 D- : مـ" "'

O مطبوخ: مخلوط O BT ويعمل: ويستعمل
ºإذا انفجر: فإنّه يفجر o
A فإن سلكت: فإنسلكت D

الملدّة: المادّة 0
"إلى: في D
"الرحم: المرأة D
"اليفسل: + فم D
 وشـحم العجـول وشـمـع أصـفر ومن مـّ البيض المثـوي خمسة دراهم ومقل أزرق ومّ ومرّ أحمر من كلّ واحـد مـثـقـال وزعفــران نصف مـثقـــال، تدقّ الأدوية 895 وتسـحق مع البيض بشـراب وتذاب

 يفعل به هكذا مرارا فإنّه نافع مجرّب" 1.
'وينقّهِه: وينفعه B
' ${ }^{\text {r }}$
r
'وصفته: وصنعته هو D- B وهو T

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { D- أن: } \\
& \text { أصفر: أبيض } \\
& \text { وتذاب: ويداف T T } \\
& \text { ويضرب: ويضربه D + الجميع DO } \\
& \text { و وتحتمل: وتتحمل ولصم } \\
& \text { "مجرّب: + جيد }
\end{aligned}
$$

الباب الثالث عشر’ في القروح المتولّدة في الرحم


 والوجع والضـربان ني ْ الرحم مع اللذع الشـديد فإن كان في 905 الجـرح تأكّل كـان لون المادّةً أســود الوجع والاشتعال.




B' عشر: + من المقالة السادسة

D D تشربه: شربته
T
O- :هني الرحم: O
آلمادّة: المدّة
Tأسود: سوداء T المارة:
O ورائحتها: ورائحته
T والاشتعال: واسهال
"تصب" في: تصبب من T T
" وتسكّن: وتنفي B وتهدئ OT
T' يؤخذ: تأخذ
 البـيض ولبنّ ${ }^{\text {ا }}$ ودهن

 الماءُ فـيـخلط بدهن الورد وشيء من بيـاض الـيض ويحـن به' 'الرحم. وتسـقى المرأة مطبوخا مـتّخذا" من عناب ومـخيطا"
r
أو .أ.الرحم: O-
'
'ولبن: بلبن D
(وماء: واما
D- :ودهن حبَ القرع
'به: منه D
B مقشثور: مقشرّ
D- :ويصفَّى
T- $-\mathrm{ch}^{9}$
"بَه: منه D
T- : متّخذا"
"

وبزر خشـخاش وعود السوس' وبزر الخطمي ومـا أشبـه ذلك، وتسـقى أيضـا صـمن عربي وبزر رجلة وطـين أرمني وكتيـيرا . 920

 والجلنار والعدس وقشر" الرمّان وما أشبه ذلك الك
فـإن كانت القـروح مـتأكّلة أمـرنا المرأةٌ أنْ الأشـياء التي تنفع من تأكّل القروح مثل دم الألخوين
 الأدوية إمّـا

'السوس: اليبوس DT
「اليمانية: الحمقاء اليو DT
O-:
"
T أن تستعمل: باستعمال
D- : "المر"
"
D- : إمّا

O
'وتحتمل: ويحمل BT

## في صوفة أيضا' فإنّهَ ي ينفع.

 وممّا ${ }^{\text {ي ينفع }}$ الأقاقية فيسحق ويطلى به الرحم، أو يؤخذ زعفران ويسحق بدهن 'ودد وشحم إوز ويغمس فيه صوفة وتحتمل ' في القي القبل.

 دانقان ومن حبّ الغـار نصف درهم، يدقّ ذلك ويخلط بيـياض


البـيض ودهن ورد وشيء مـن شـراب' ويغـمس فـيـه صـوفـة


 كثيرا وبزر رجلة بماء بارد.
وزعم دياســـقـــوريـوس

 945

'
' 'وحكَّ: وحكَا
DO- :فيدقَّ بزر الكتّان:
B شيار: شياف
B- :'وتسقى... باردا
T دياسقوريدوس: ديسقوريدوس D ديسقوريدس
^الحلبة: الحنطة
"واحتملته: وتحتمله اله
D لَّلْ: فإنَّه يليّن
"بصفرة: به صفرة
Tا واحتملته: وتحتمله
الباب الرابع عشر ’ في نتوءّ الرحم ونوالهr

 في المياه البـاردة. غيـعرض من أجل ذلك الـك الاسـترخاء الحادث 950

 منیْ سبب الطلق الشديد .

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { 'عشر: + من المقالة السادسة B } \\
& \text { T } \\
& \text { 'ونواله: ودواءه D } \\
& \text { أو من: + قبل T } \\
& \text { D الجلوس: + عليه } \\
& \text { T- أجل: أجل } \\
& \text { ع } \\
& \text { خَكرنا: ذكرناه O + من OT } \\
& \text { "نتوء: وينتو B } \\
& \text { "'وخرجه: وخروجها B } \\
& \text { " } \\
& \text { T } \\
& \text { "إلى: من O } \\
& \text { " }
\end{aligned}
$$

والذي ينبـغي لنا أن نبتدىئ بـه ' من عـلاج نتوء الرحم أن

 الطراثيث أو بعصـارة الأقاقية وتجعل على الرحم وتشدّ بـها ـ ثـثـ تقعد بعد ذلك في مـاء قد طبِخ فيـه آس وجلنار وقشـر
 المطبـوخْ وتجــعل على


 D- : به:
OT وقشر: وقشور D'
'وتنقع: وتوضع

$$
\mathrm{O}-: s(1)^{s}
$$

" موضعها: موضعه D
T الخيري: الخمر T
D- :'وعصارة:
" حامض: حلو T
「'ذلك: دذلك D

ويطلى منـه على فم' الرحم الناتئ، أو يؤخـــــذ طـين أرمنـي ويســحق بماء الورد ودهن الورد ويطلى بـهـ، أ، أو يؤخـــذ ورد 965


 يعصب بخرق أخرى ويترك حينا فإنّ ذلك يردّ الرحم. وتعطّس 970
 المرأة أصلح حــال‘ الرحم الناتئ. وتـــالج بالعــلاج الذي


## ذكرنا' في باب استرخاء المقدة وخروجها إن شاء اللّه.

إنّ جـالينوس ${ }^{\circ}$ ذكر في ${ }^{\text {º }}$
 يكون اتصّصاله بمعاليق ضعيفة ولذلك قد
 نمت ' 'ذكرنا: ذكرناه「 T Tللأمراض: من الأمراض

D اللازمة: المزمنة
BT جالينوس: + الحكيم 'في مواضع كثيرة: في كثير من موضوعاته DOT D الثمر: الثمار O في أولّ: فأوّل D- :قد
' O وحرّكتها: وحركّها BT تحركها

rirn
 من خـارج، قـال جـالينوس وعلى هذا المثال يكون " الجنين فـإنِّ الجنـنين في إتّصـاله بـه ضـيعفا فإن عرض للمرأة أن تثب أو تزلق فتسقط 985
 مفرط^ من أفواه العروق التي في المقعدة أو انفجار الدم من



D أشجرها: بشجرتها B الشجرها
'استكملت: + وكملت B استعملت B 'يكن الجنين: -「'في أولّ: فأوّل BDO أمره: مرة 0 D O- با D تفصد: + عرقا
^مفرط: حفرة T-
'رقبة: عنق O
D تتحرّك: تحريك
" حركة: تحركا
r'الشدّة: الشوية
B
 اسـتكمل وتمّ. وأهــا ني

 الشدّة من غير أن ينال الجنين منه ضر ر.


 من ذلك إسقاط الجنين" . فإن اشتهت شيئا موجودا في ذلك

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { 'اتُصال: اتّصالها D- } \\
& \text { 'الجنين: + أيضا } \\
& \text { O- 'يكن } \\
& \text { في: + ابتداء } \\
& \text { BT تحتمل: تحمل } \\
& \text { Tالحامل: المرأة T T } \\
& \text { D-: } \\
& \text { أشثياء: شيء D } \\
& \text { T } \\
& \text { B B وتتوّقّ: وتتشوّ } \\
& \text { "إليها: إليه DT } \\
& \text { D- الجنـن الـه }
\end{aligned}
$$

 مـعـهه ${ }^{\circ}$ الحـوامـل من 1000 النـاردين أو دهـن المصـطكى أو دهن الأفـــنـتـين أو بيــعضـ الضمادات العطرية ويخاصـّة فَ في أوّل الحمل.



'الأوان: الأيام B الزمان T
'كها: بها
'بما تشتهيه: بما تشتهي O- DT
ؤوتدبّر: وتدثّر

D- من خارج:
D- : لها
B
"وبخاصيّة: وخاصّة D
T تاتمرخ: والتمريخ
B وتتغذى: وتغتذي التريت
ا'الطبيعة: اللطيفة D
OT الحامل: اللحوامل:
B- B
D"مرخ: يمرخ D

 تطلى ْ الرجلان بماء طبيخ الكرنب" والقيصوم. فـإن عرض للحـوامل



'مضروبا: مضروب D r الساقين: الساق 'بخلّ: + خمر B
T بالقيموليا: بالقيلونيا B بالقموليا
BT تطلى: تنطل:
B الكرنب: الكرم
BD للحوامل: للحامل人- الرديئة:
" يؤمرن: يؤمرون BO تؤمر
D- :برياضة أبدانهن:"
D يوشربن: ويشرب"


"بعد: + أخذ 0
D



 للمعدة.
فـإن كانت الأخـلاط هـائجـة في بدن " الحامل فينبـغي أن

 'طلبن: طلبت D + أكل O 'فيعطين: فتعطى D فيعطن D T- 'في ؤتدبّر: وتدثّر
Dمعدهن": بعد ذلك D الضمادات: -DT

T- العطرية أيضا: - أيطا ويسقين: وتسقى D ويسقون OT

Tالغائلة: الغوائل
"بدن الحامل: أبدان الحوامل المل
Tإليه: - عليه Th
B- :"أشهر
O-: 0 : ${ }^{18}$

أوقــات الحــمل الذي يكون فــــــهُ ا اتّصــال الجنين بـالرحم صحيحا قويا ويكن التقدّم على هذا أقلّ ويكون الدواء مسهلا مـأمونا.

 الجنينْ فـمن ذلك



 منخولة وتستف منها من درهم إلى مثقال على قدر الحاجة إن D- فيه اتّصـال T r

B B- الجنـينيا
ج

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { B الرياح: الريح } \\
& \text { D- وهو: }
\end{aligned}
$$

"مجرّب: معروف OT + أخلاطه B B
'درهـم: رزن درهمـين B
"ونانخواه: ونانوخه


ويزيل وجع الأرحـام والمـدـدة في الحوامل ويمنع من الإسقـاط






 فإنّه ' 'نافع إن شاء اللّه تعالى.

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { T- :صفة' } \\
& \text { 'r } \\
& \text { r }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { O } \\
& \text { T- مثقالان... واحد } \\
& \text { B- :ويرفع } \\
& \text { ^ويسقى: ويستعمل } \\
& \text { "من: وزن BOT } \\
& \text { BDT- :فنّإنه نافعن }
\end{aligned}
$$

 في كتابه في الأروية المقابلة للأدواء أنّ هذا الدواء ينفع نهش

 ثلاثة" مثاقيل وبزر كرفس وأنيسون وسـاسـاليوس " "من كلّ


ئنفع من: ينتفع به في B
B نهش: + الهوامّ و B
الرتيلاء: + ولسع B
ذوات السموم: -O + صفة دواء B + أخلاطه T
^ثلاثون: + حبة B
"مثقالان: D- مثقالين OT
"ومن القّ: + والا؟؟ D

B- :تلاثة مثاقيل"
r'ونساساليوس: وساليوس B والسلا سلاي O-D وساسان T
"
" وتعجن: ويسحق D

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { T ' } \\
& \text { 'وذكر: ذكره }
\end{aligned}
$$

مـثـقــال مـع تسـعــة' أواقي ‘ خـمـر فـإنّه غـاية إن شــاء اللّه 1050 تعالى.

الباب السادس عشر َ في عسر الولادة
إذا بلغت المرأة وقت الولادة الطبيـعيـة التي قدّرها اللّه تـعالى
 الحـركات وتدفع الولد القوّة الدافعة التي في الأرحام فيخرج من المشيمة.

أسباب كثيرة وريّما عرض من قبل

'تسعة: تسـع B ثمانية D 'أواقي: أواق DOT


$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { الحركات: - الحري } \\
& \text { O- O }
\end{aligned}
$$

الأرحام: + بسبب قلّة غذائه B
*
D- :هوبّما ...الرحم
T- :هجرى T
DO- نوبّما ...المرأة:
 الجنين فـلا ${ }^{\text {ي }}$

 تسلس الولادة علـى المرأة وربّمــا كــان ذلك مـا 1065 الصيف فإنّ الهواء يكون حيئذ حارّا محلّالا للقوّة التي تستعين بها على " دفع الجنين من الرحم.
 بإدخـالهـا كتّان وشـعير مـقشـور 'وتدهن الوركان" وأسفل الجوف 1070
'قبل: كثرة T
'وريّما ...خروجه: - -
'
"
D هلا تسلس: وتعسر
O- على:
"
^
D- وبيزر خطمي
D مقششو: مقشر: امير:
DT الوركان: الوركين



 وتسقى منه بشراب^ أو يؤخذ أفسنتين رومي فـيدقّ وتسـقى 1075 منه بميبختع وتعطّس بالكندس وتئمر بالمشي وتدفع " ' دفعا
 وممّا يسهل الولادة أيضا أن يؤخذ حجر يابس فيعلق على فخذ



> الباب السابع عشر’ في الأشياء التي تخرجَّ الجنين

 أدوية تفسـد النطفة في الرحم وتمنع من الحبل وأدوية تقـتل

 استعمالها إذ كانت مفسدة للأجنّة كما ذكرنا .
فمن ذلك القطران من شــنه أن يفسد النطفة إذا مسح 1090


بـه' طرف
 يصير من يستعمله دائما عقيما . وإذا احتملته المرأة من أسفل قتل الأجنّة الأحياءْ وأخرج ${ }^{\circ}$ الميّتة.




o
" O- بماء O

واحتملته المرأة أدرّ الطمث وأحـر الجنين. ودقيق' الترمس إذا اتّخـذ ${ }^{\text {إمنه }}$ 1100 أصل الجنطيانا فرزحة أخرج الجنين.
 منه مثقال بفلفل ومرّ نقّى النفساء الرحم وأدرّ الطمث وأخـرج ج الجنـين، وإذا احتـــلـتـه المرأة في فرزحة فعل مثل${ }^{\text {ذلك. }}$
والدار صـيني يسـقط الجنين إذا شـرب واحتـمل مع مـرّ 1105
 وعصـارة بخو مـريم إذا طلي به الموضع الذي أسفل السرّة أسـقط الجنين وإذا خلط بـعسل واحتمل بصـوفة فـعل مـثل'
" و"وعسل: ثمّ غسل
T- ودقيق ...الجنين: الون
rاتَّذ الخذ
T ${ }^{\text {r }}$
T ديسقيريدوس: ديسقوريدوس D B

O- :
B
درَّن: بخّرت
D- السرّة:
O- :مثل"

ذلك. وعصـارة قتّاء الحمـار أيضـا تفسـد الجنين إذا احتملت بصـوفـة وكـذلك الجندبادســــر مـع الفوذنـج النهـري أو البـرّي. 1110


 فرزجة أدرّ الطمث وأخرج الجنين.



'والقنطوين: والقنطريون BD
B- الكا
'
B شُشك: قدر
O- : وعصارته...ذلك
D- : ${ }^{\circ}$
O- : والقنطويون:...الجنين D"
وحرف: وقرفة D
"فيدقّ ويعجن: فدقّا وعجنا O
"'وتمسكه: وأمسكته O
D-:"نقية
Tاذلك: + مما DT

من الحمل' ويفسد النطفة. وإن أخذ سقمونيـا وشـم حنظل

 والميّت. وفقّاح الكرنب" إذا سـحق واحتمل بصـوفة منع المني
 من" الحـبل


## القضيب＇تفعل هذا الفعل بعينهُ ．

 وإذا احـتمـل ورق الفـوذنج مـســــوقـا تـتـل الأجنّة وأدرّ 1125 الطمث فرزجـات واحتمـل جذبْ الجنين وأخـرجـهُ ．والمرّ الأحـــر إذا
 السـذاب أدرّ الطمث وأخرج الجنين بسرعة وقشر أصل الغـار 1130
 إذا احتملتته المرأة بـعد الجـمـاع منع من＂الحبل＂＂．والقنّة＂

「"القنّة. ..الجنين: والكبريت إذا تدخّت به المرأة طرحت الجنين D

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { 'القضيب: + قبل وقت الجماع ع } \\
& \text { "بعينه: نفسه } 0 \\
& \text { 「الطمث: + وأخرج الأجنّة والمشيمة D } \\
& \text { D- : } \\
& \text { "جذب: يجذب B أخرج D } \\
& \text { "وأخرجه: ويخرجه D-B } \\
& \text { T- : } \\
& \text { A التسعة: تسع B } \\
& \text { Tالجنين: + بسرعة } \\
& \text { OT- " } \\
& \text { B الحبل: الحمل }
\end{aligned}
$$

وعرق’ الفـوّةَ إذا احتـمل أدرّ الطمث وأحـدر الجنـين والشبّ



 1140 مدّة إن شاء اللّه تعالى.

الباب الثامن عشر ’' في إخراج المشيمة من الرحم
 أن نبادر بالعلاج الذي يخرجها مثل أن تعطّس المرأة بالكندس

T- 'وعقرق ...الجنين:
r
TT تطع: منع
الحبل: الحمل O + وقطعه D
Tالكبريت: والكرت T
Tالجنين: الاجنة
r rتعمل: فتستعمل D وتستعمل D
^الميّت: + في الرحم T

B-: فتخرجه في أسرع مدّة

"الولادة: + في الرحم T
 يصـنّى من مـائه ويذرّ عليـه شـيء من خطمي وتسـقى المرأة من

 تطرح المشيمـة.

 أو يطبخ البرنجاسف " ويصبّ مـؤه على الرحم ويتبخّر بـه.


> "وتسد": وتشدّ
> 'ومنخريها: وهجرها D ومنخرها D
> 'وتؤزمر: وتحمر B
> O
> Oفإنّها تطرح: طرحت O
> أن: أو
> B
> (شلت: سلجم B الشيلم DT
> الكرنب: الكبريت BD
> 'وتحتمله: وتحمل D وتحمله D
> "البرنجاسف: البرنجاست O هو القيصوم D

 والمشيمة.

 نصف درهم من تشور السليخة بماء الفوذنج الرطب أو تسقى الونى وذن دانقين جندبادستر بماء الفوذنج النهري فإنّ ذلك 1160 يحدر الدم ^ إن شاء اللّه تعالى.


T- T- T'
'بحافر: بحافو
D بالخردل: ماء الخردل
Tالام: + يخرج
o jo
o- أو ..الفوذنج النهريا
Tلك: + مما
الدم: الطمث 0
B
النساء: الأنساء
"الداء: الدعاء


 وريّمـاِ كان مـن تحلّب ترسب وتحتقن في حقٌ الورك أيضـا فيعرض من ذلك وجع في في
 خنصر الرجل وريّما كان في الجانبين.


rir
"
'الحجابي: المجاري
「 النساء: السماديقوس D D
D- :وهو بين
ألبلغماني: البلغمانية B البلغمي D
D D إذا رسب: D
T- 'وريّما ...الورك"
D تحملّب: تغلّب B
^يمتدّ: امتدّ OT
O- -
B أشدّ: أشرّ ال
O- : d $^{\prime \prime}$







 o- الجانب:
'بلغماني: البلغم B بلغمي BT「اتّبع: تبع BT D-
عئلا: إلى D
O المكتهلين: الكهول D D المكهلين T'تمازجه: ومزاجه B ممزج
"مرّة: بمرة T
"اتّتع: تبع B
وْرقة: وحركة BDO
"في: من Tا
"
'فاكصد: فصدنا OT

أنّه قد يبلغ من استفراغ الدم في هذه العلّة التي تسمّى عرق
 العرقَّ المسمّى الاكَحل من جـي



 والصبر ويدهن بالأدهان الباردة الحسنة المزاج إن شاء اللّه. 1190 وإن كان تولّد هذا الداء من قبل البلغم اللزج ألو الفض الون
 البارد في لين ولطافة مثل حبّ السورنجـان الو الو حبّ الشيطرج الانـ
 "آمن: + فعل ا" 'الداء: العلّة
"العرق المسمّى الاكحل: عرق الاكحل D

Th
D الحمّامات: الحمَّم
المذبة: العنبية B العذب D
"المياء: الماء
"
'أو حبّ الصناعى: D- الصبّاغى B الصناعى B الضبّاعى O

أو' الثــيــادريطوس ومــا أشــــــهـ ذلك مـن الأدوية المســـهـلة 1195
 المتّخذة من ع القنطوريـن وبزر الكتّان والحلبـة وشـصم الحنظل ومـا أشــبـه ذلك ويغــتـنـون بالأغـذية التي تولد الكيـمـوس الجـيّـــد ويمتنعـون
 الانهـغـام

D- أو الثيادريطوس:
' 'بالحقن المتّغذة: بحقن تتَّذ BT
"من: ب- B

D D دلك: + من الأدوية المسهلة للكيموسات

V ويمتنعون: ويمنعوا O ويمتنعوا
ا الامتلاء: التملى BT
OT ويجتنبون: ويجتنب D الايتنبوا
T الأغذية: الاطعمة
"البطيئة: الطية
ا'الانهضام: الهضم
'
T
BT الامتلاء: التملى

بالحقن وبدخول الحمّام فعند ذلك نرجع إلى الأطلية والدهانـانـات








 'استعملنا: استعملت D

D- : منه
 D استفراغ
جُجملة: لجملة B جهة
B أنتقي: نقي
D- B وطهر طهرا: وطهر لنا طههرا
B- : بيّنا
T- :علمنا
D ونتوقّى: وهو فیى D

## العضو العليل أكثر ممّا تملّل منه،.



 على مـا أصف "ويسكن الوجع. ومثال^ الكي"، يؤخذ صـوفـة

 D اتجذب: تحدث"
B B عند ذلك إلى العضو العليل: إلى العضو عند ذلك على العليل ' منه: عنه
D
Tالعرق: العروق T T الع
D Dالكيّ: المكسر إن شاء اللّه عزّ وجلّ
º دياسقوريدوس: ديسقويدوس D ديسقوريدس DT
المعز: الماعز D
D D أصف: -
ومثال الكي": مثل ذلك O O أن OT
B- :في زيت : في
'جيّدا: جيّ O 0 نعما
" توتصيّر: وتوضت
rالعصبة: القصبة D الحصبة O
B- :التى بين الإبهام"
 وتترك حتى تخمد نارها وتجدّد إلى أن يصل حسٌ الألم بالفخذ وزعم دياســقــوريدوس
 عنه وحمل على عرق النساء بحرارته نفع نفعا بيّنا .



T بالنار: + حتى تصير جمرة T
T وتحمل: وتجعل
'وتجدّد: + له
T بالفخذ: إلى الفخذ
「دياسقويدوس: ديسقوريدوس D ديسقوريدس T
أيضا: - BD
أَأنّه: + أيضا B
○- :
"أخثاء: أخشاء
'وجعل: وحمل DT وحما O
"

B- : الحار"ا"
BDT الـوارة: القلونيا: والفلونيا
 الفوذنج والشبثٌ والبابونج وصـعتر وإكليل الملك والمرزنجوش 1230 وورق الرند وما شاكل ذلك من الأدوية المحلّلة. أو يطبخ الحرمل مـع ${ }^{\text {أ }}$





D
"الكور: الكوخ B الكمّون D 'وينطل: ويطلى O
'مـع: ب- B

Tأصله والخردل: اصول الخردل T
 O- به
'خرق: خرقة OT
DT
D- وعسل:
O-: "فإنّ...
T- :أصل : أصل
D Dلكبّر: الكبّار
 ناعـمـا ويسـحق بخلّ ويطلى به الموضـع فـإنّ ذلك ممّا

 القسط والزنبق ودهن الحرمل وما أسبه ذلك.

 صفة" حبّ الصناعي " الكامل النافع لعلل المفاصـل المتولّدة عن الفـضـــول الغليظة وينفع بـاذن اللّه من عــرق النســاء 1245

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { T- أو ...الموض: } \\
& \text { D- : 'رقّا } \\
& \text { T- : }{ }^{\text {: }} \\
& \text { وينف: + أيضا D } \\
& \text { هذا الداء: - لهذا الداء } \\
& \text { B الأدهان: هذه الأدهـان } \\
& \text { B الرند: الورد } \\
& \text { D- ويستعمل...ذلك D } \\
& \text { T- بالتجربة: } \\
& \text { T فحمدناها B- ' } \\
& \text { T- صفة " } \\
& \text { r الصناعى: الضبّاعى }
\end{aligned}
$$



 حرمل وبزر كرفس وأنجدان وأنيسون من كلّ واحد وذن درهـ




'والنقرس: والنقرص o
'بديع: + عجيب أخلاطه
T الشق الوشّقّ: B-
B- : والسكبينج :
סْ والمقل الأزرق: ومقل D
D والجاواشير: وجوسير الانير D
D- :الأحمر السقطري:
D- :والعنزروت
B
التصبي: قصي D
D- الثاثة...سائر الأروية"
B- اr
B- : هذه
D : وتحبَب: + صفار:
 يسـقى على أنّه الصناعئ وعلى أنّه حبّ المنتّ وعلى أنّه حبّ 1255 السكبينج ومنافعه كثيرة إن شاء اللّه تعالى. صــة حبّ السكبينّع نافع باذن اللّه من وجع المفـاصل





 وتنخل وتعجن بماء الكرفس الرطب و وتحبّب صغـار وار وتجفّف

'مثقالين: درهمـين BDT
D - وثيقة... وعلى أنّه
" فهذا : غهو
O الصناعي: الضبّاعي
"عن: من B في
'و قد جربّناه: -O + أخلاطه B + + مرارا أخلاطه T T
"
"
B- الرطب:
T- أو بماء: ألو أ

مـصطكى وأنيـســـن وأسطوخـودوس' ويثــرب منه وزن

 المفـاصل والريحعُ في البـدن من أسـبـاب البـرد


 كرفس وأنيسـن وبزر هـندي وأسطوخــودوس درهم، تدقّ الأدوية وتنخل وتعجن بماء الكرفس وتحبّبِ صنار 1275 وتجفّف في الظل والشربة منه مـثقالان بماء الحمّص ويؤخذ بعد حمية واحتراس "' إن شاء اللّه تعالى.
'وأسطوخودوس: وأسدوخولوس B وأسطوخودس D

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { D- :واحتراس } \\
& \text { " اللخام: للخلط D }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { BT البرد: + أخلاطه } \\
& \text { B درهمان: ونن درهم: } \\
& \text { B- : وبزر }
\end{aligned}
$$

Aأسطوخودوس: وأسذوخوطوس B وأسطوخودس DT O-:نصف:
D- :'واحتراس"

صـفـة حبَ حّ يـنفع من وجع الظهـر والمفـاصل العـارضّ من البلفـم والريح الـغليظة والشــربـة منـه مـثـــــال بمـاء حـارّ

 مثـقالان وأنيسـون مـثقـالان ونصف، قـشـر ^ريــان ويوزيدان
 مثقال، غاريقون خمسة مثاقيل، شحم " الحنظل أربعة مثاقيل



$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { ' } \\
& \text { 'العارض: العارضة } \\
& \text { Tارّ: فاتر Tا } \\
& \text { (والطعام: والغذاء } \\
& \text { B- : بماء } \\
& \text { 'ريحاني: + أخلاطه BT } \\
& \text { T- يؤخذ: T } \\
& \text { DT הتشر ريحان: سورنجان } \\
& \text { T وْماهيزهل: وماهرهره } \\
& \text { B الصبّاغين: السباّغينا } \\
& \text { T- :شحم:..مثاقيل" } \\
& \text { B- : وتربد عشرة مثاقيل: } \\
& \text { Tr }
\end{aligned}
$$

مـثقال ونصف ويلتّان بماء السذاب وتعجن بـه الأدوية ويجـعل منـهـا حبَ أمـثــال الفلفل، الشـربـه منه درهـمـان
 صــفـة دهن
 الحنظل خمسون مثقالا ومن ' الفربيون ثلاثقن مثقالا ومن الا ومن


 العتيق رطل ويطبخ" ' بنار ليّنّة حتى يذهب ثلثا الماء ويبـقى
T「ي السحر: سحرا D + فإنّه ينفع T
Tدهن: + حب T

BT عجيا: + أخلاطه
T- ومن... ثلاثون مثقالا: O- ومن...عشرون مثقالا B يرضّ: يدقّ
ويصب": يصيرّ 0
" حمل على النار: عمل عليه

$$
\text { "'يطبخ: + فيه } 0
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { DT- : أزرقرق } \\
& \text { 'ويجعل منها حب": ويحبب DT } \\
& \text { ' درهمان: درهما D }
\end{aligned}
$$



 منخولين، ثم يسـاط سـوطا حسنا ، ثمّ تتزله عن النار وترفـعـهِ 1300 في بســتــوقـــة " فــإذا أردت والرياح " السـاكنـة في المتن فـاسق العليل مـثـقـال سكبـينجَ عند نومـه فإذا أصبح فـاسـةه مثقالا آخر بماء فـاتر، ثمّ ادهن أسـفل قدمـيـه وبين وركيه فـإنّه يخرج


صفـة＇شيـاف ألّفتـه لإنزال الخام الغليظَ اللزج ولوجع


 تدقّ＂الأدوية ${ }^{\text {وت }}$ عسل مــعـقود＂ويخلط＂ناعـمــا＂ الشيرج، ثمّ يعمل أمثالْ ْ البلّوط ويستدخل باستقصـاء، فإذا

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { ' } \\
& \text { 「الغليظ اللزج: الغليظة اللزجة OT } \\
& \text { 「السبب: + أحلاطه BT } \\
& \text { T- أزرق: أر }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { "تدقّ: + وتنخل T T } \\
& \text { T- الأدوية: الدية } \\
& \text { و وتذاب: تداف D } \\
& \text { " - مع: ب- } \\
& \text { D- :معقود" } \\
& \text { O- :ويخلط: 0- } \\
& \text { T O- O- } \\
& \text { O وتمس" D ويمسح: ويضاف" } \\
& \text { D اليد: إليه } \\
& \text { Tأمثال: اعمال }
\end{aligned}
$$

عملت اللواحدة وخـرجت اســدخلت أخـرى إلى ’ ثلاثة للقوي` إن شاء اللّه تعالى.
 ويسـخّنْ الأعضــاء البـاردة والمثـانة والكلى ويحلّلَ الأودام الجاسئة: يؤخذ من


 المجتمـــة في الأعضـاء وتحلّل الأخـلاط وتنضجـهـا وتسـخّن 'إلى: + تمام O

D- :القالئ
'
B النافع: النافعة


"الاؤرام الجاسئة: الاورم الجاسئ T + اخلاطه T ^من دهن خلّ قسط واحد: دهن ورد ودهن قسط D D دهن خلّودهن قسط o
أواق: أواقي
'
" ا"تفش": تفشي
r

الأعضاء الباردة وأقوى الأدهان في ذلك دهن قثتّاء الحمار، ثـمّ








$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { D- :ودهن الحرمل' } \\
& \text { B- D ودهن الشبث": ودهن } \\
& \text { ثشاكهها: أشبهها } \\
& \text { اعاحتا + إلى } \\
& \text { D ونفي: ويفش } \\
& \text { T الرياح: الارياح: } \\
& \text { حبّ: ما أمكن من } \\
& \text { A } \\
& \text { بُو بالور: -B أو بلاذرا } \\
& \text { ' فربيون: فريبون B فربيونا } \\
& \text { " حرمل: حرمـا } \\
& \text { Yآو ميعة: } \\
& \text { Orirn: قسطا } \\
& \text { عاءفوذنج: فوذنجا }
\end{aligned}
$$

والبـزود الحارّة' المحلّلة تطبخ مـفردة أو مـؤلّفة، ويكون مقدار 1330
 مثقال وينبغي في الجملة أن تقلّل عمن استعمـالها وأن تتوقى إلاْ بـعـد اسـتـفـراغ الــدن لـــلا من سـائر البـلن فيكون في

 نافع. صـفـة ضــمـاد وصـفـهن إســحق لوجـع الركبتـين والوركين وهو " مـجـرّب: يؤخـن من الشــمـع " عشــرة دراهـم ومن علك

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { T- الحارّة } \\
& \text { 「 } \\
& \text { 'كلّ" + وقت }
\end{aligned}
$$

D تقتلّل من استعمالها: من يقلل استعمالها
O
'لئلا: لكيلا
T- في الفي
^شكنت: اسكب BT انسكبت O
"استعمالها: استعمالنا الماء


البطم أوقـيـة ومن الخلّ الثقـيف والزيت العـنبِ من كلّ واحد 1340 نصف أوقيـتان، يذابَ ${ }^{\text {T }}$
 بالنهار بماء حارّ إن شاء اللّه تعالى.

> الباب العشرنِ في النقرس
 شديد مؤذ يصحبـه امتداد في العصب وضربان وإنّمـا



D- العذب: D
O- نصف: O

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { OT- :مرّ: }
\end{aligned}
$$

B العشرون: + من المقالة السادسة

'وإِنْما: دائما

"
ا'الوجع: الضربان الوان
B B الويمومة الضربان: ودوامه B

الضــربان وحـرقــة واشــــــــال في القـدمـين. وإن ' كـان ذلك

 والمفاصل لا تقيح لأنّ التقييح إنّما يحدث في الأعضاء اللحما
 باردة وهي مـع ذلك عارية من اللحم فليس يمكن أن يكون فيها
 والترفة وترك الرياضـة مـع الإكثار من الأكل والشرب وذلك الانك أنّ

 الضـعـيف لا يسـتطيع دفـع الفضـل الزائد عن نفسـه لضــف قوّته. ومن أجل ما ذكرنا صار النقرس أكثر مـا يعرض اللملوك

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { D- :'إن.... النقرسرس' } \\
& \text { 「 } \\
& \text { D- الام } \\
& \text { D- :المفاصل...اللحم } \\
& \text { " }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { B }
\end{aligned}
$$

وأصـــاب' الدعـة والأبدان الرطبـة ولا سـيّيّمـا من كـان منهم كثيـر المجـامـعـة وخـاصــة


 عصـبـيـان" ولهـذا السـبب صـار الخـصـيـان لا يعـرض لهم 1370


$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { 'وأصحاب: وأهل D }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { Tالامتلاء: التملى T } \\
& \text { O- : من الطعام } \\
& \text { O } \\
& \text { ' التنجذب: فتجتذب B فتجذب D D } \\
& \text { O الجماع: المجامعة }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { D- "يضر" } \\
& \text { B بالعصب: في العصب B } \\
& \text { B } \\
& \text { 'وجع: داء TH } \\
& \text { D- : ذلك: } \\
& \text { \% الأحدهم: لهم }
\end{aligned}
$$

أبدانهم من كثرة التخليط وقلّة الحميـة ' واتّباع شـهـوتهم 「 في المطاعم كالذي يفعل ${ }^{\text {الصبيان }}$
 ذلك فـإنَّ ذلك من كـثـرة تخليطهم. وكذلك أيـضـا النســاء لا 1375 يـــرض لهنَّ وجع ِ النقـرس أصـــلا الجـمـاع تعبـا شـديدا كتعب الرجـال وأيخـا لأنّهنّنّ يخـرجن الا


'الحمية: الجماع TT شهوتهم: شهواتهم T

T- أصصلا
B- أيضا
T- :وجع انقرس"
DT- :أصلا
B B
D

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { 'يخرجن: يفرغنت BT ينزعن D } \\
& \text { D-:في" } \\
& \text { B أصحاب: صاحب } \\
& \text { B النقرس: + إذا ابتدأ فی إنسان }
\end{aligned}
$$


 أقلّ قليــلا وأمــا الشتاء فإنّ برؤه عسر .

 قد كثر في بدنه، ويكن الفصد من " مأبض



 حبّ الشـيطرج أو حبّ السـورنجان أو حبّ الصناعي ي أو حبّ الو الأصطمـاخيقون أو حبّ السكبينج ومـا أشبه ذلك ألك فإذا علمنا
 عند ذلك القدمـين بالضـــــادات والأدهـان والنطولات ونجـعل مـا
 8'مأبض الرجل: منابض اليد B مبائض الرجل B مأبض اليد DO 'بدّ من: يؤمن الرجن الئر r'العضو: العصب T- :هذا . .الفضل كانت: كان 0
D
'بلفميا: بلفمانيا OT
O- الردئة
¹ الصناعي: الضبّاعي BO الضياعي " الفضول الفاسدة: الفضـل الردئ B B النقصت: تقضت الـقت
B- الجالجنا ...يعالج" "r
آأدوية: من الأدوية التى B


 الرطبة وورق الخس" ودهن الورد مـع بياض اليـ اليض والصندلين




 والقلونيـا" ومـا أشــبـه ذلك. ويغتــنون " بالأغـنـية السـريعـة 1405
'إليهنّ: إليها D إليهم O إليهما T T
'الداء: ذلك
B- : عالجناه'
Tم D
'نذكرها: نذكر
T- : فـي ما
Aوالشكزنايا: والشكزيانا B والسحرنايا
D- :وجوارش الكمّون أونا
B ألفلافل: الفلفل
T والقلونيا: والفاونيا
" و'ويغتنون: وغذيه D ويغذى O

الانهضـام الجيّدة الخلط ويروضـون ' أبدانهم رياضــة مـعتدلة


صفـة حبّه السورنجـان النافع باذن اللّه لوجـع المفاصل 1410







$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { 'ويروضن: ويروض نفسـه D } \\
& \text { r } \\
& \text { 'موافق: يوافق B + لهم T T } \\
& \text { عو تعالى: + فمن ذلك BD } \\
& \text { ס هب": جوارش } \\
& \text { "البارد: الباردة D } \\
& \text { السبب: + اخلاطه T } \\
& \text { ا^الأبيض: ال } \\
& \text { و والمقل: والفلفل T } \\
& \text { B فوربيون: وفريبون } \\
& \text { "صفارا: صغار B }
\end{aligned}
$$

في ' الظل والشربـة منهَ مــثقال بمـاء حـارّ أو مـثقال ونصف على حمية واحتراس إن شاء اللّه تعالى.
 من السـورنجـان درهم وهليلج أصـفـر ونـن مـثقـــالينْ وتريد أبيض " مثقال ويعجن بماء الكراّث درهمين" ' بماء فاتر إن شاء اللّه تعالى.
 سـابو ": يؤخـن أنيسـون وكمّهن كرمـاني وفلفل أبيض ودار 'BD-:'ني الظل: O- : منه
'r مختصر: آخر O-
B النقرس: + وهو جيّ
o مثقالين: مثقال O
أبيض: 0-
م
" الكرَاث: الكرنب
Tويشرب: والشربة
"'
"- صفة:
B
"'سابود: + أخلاطه B

 وسـورنجـان عشـرون 'درهمــا، تجــمـع هذه الأدويـة مـسـحـوقـة
 إناء وتستعمل والشربة منه درهم ْ بماء الكمّون إن شاء واء اللّه.
1430
 الشـتاء والصيف: يؤخذ صبـر سـقطري و وفـانيد من كلّ واحد عـشـرة دراهـم ومن 'ا السـكــينج والهليلـج الأصــفـر "' ويليلج
 كلّ واحـد درهمـان ونـصف وحلتـيت منتن وجـاوشــــــر من كلّ


واحـد درهـم وحـرف أبيض درهمـان وشــيطرج هندي ' درهم، 1435 تدق الأدوية وتنخل وتحـجن بماء الكرّاث وتحــبّب بدهن الرْنبق
 كلّ زمان ولا يحتمـى عليه وهو معروف نافـع ُ إن شـاء اللّه. صــفـة عَ حبّ ينفع من


 وسـورنجـان أبيض أحد وعشـرون مثقالا وفـانيـل " إثنا عشـر مثقالا ومقل ${ }^{1 r}$ خمسة عشـر مثقالا، يدقّ وّا وينخل ويعجن بماء
 ' B- في الظل: Br "نافع: جيّد DT- B


D-:من
MSS الحكماء: الخلفاء*
D-: أصفر ....نواه
D- وأملج:
T- : ومن...مثاقيل:
" الصعتر: السعتر
T- "وفانيد . . خمسة عشر مثقالا
"'ومقل: + أززرق D

عنب الثـعلب ويتّخـنـ من ذلك حبّ ويجـفّف فـي الظل، فـإذا 1445 أحس " العليل
 حمـيـة والثـربة منـه مـثقالان بمـاء سـخن أو اللّة
صــفـة حبّ مـخـتـصـر نافع من النقـرس وهو مـجـرّبٌ 1450 مـعروف: يؤخـذ بوزيدان '" وسـورنـــان وإيارج فـيقرا وهـليلج أصـــفـر وتربد مـن كلّ واحـد جــزء، تجــمـع " هذه الأدوية مسـحـوقـة منخـولة وتعـجن

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { "يدق": + ذلك 0 } \\
& \text { 'حب": حبّات } \\
& \text { D العليل: المتوجّع BT المتألم } \\
& \text { 'بالألم: بالوجع D + مثل D } \\
& \text { D } \\
& \text { " نشتد": يشد" }
\end{aligned}
$$

DT إن كان ليلا أو نهارا Bا
T
T- أو بالنبيذ
" مجرّب معروف: جيّ B +
D بوزيدان: بوازيدان"
"
Tr

وتلحبّب والشربـة منه درهمـان أوْ مثقالان بماء حارّ إن شـاء
صـــة حبّ نافع باذن اللّه مـن أوجاع المفاصل والنقرس والأرياح
 والعنزروت


 إلى درهمين ونصف بماء حـار"، يؤخذ يومـا ويغبّ" ثـلاثة أيام أو إلى D
' B

D- : من تأليف
BT

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { D العنزروت: والانزروت }
\end{aligned}
$$

ووتجفّق: + في الظل T
"'من درهـمـين إلـى درهمــين ونصـف: درهمـين ونصـ B B من درهـمـين أو
درهمين ونصف درهن
"ويغب": ويعث 0

 أحـــر خمـســة

 1470 رطّبّه بماء عنب الثعلبُ
 الحر": يؤخذ خطمي ودقيق شـعيـر وبزر قطونا ويضـرب بماء

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { O- : صفة: } \\
& \text { ' } \\
& \text { 「خمسة: عشر D } \\
& \text { T- : أقاقيا ...درهم: } \\
& \text { D-: "ْ } \\
& \text { D- ويطلى...الثعلب: D- } \\
& \text { O } \\
& \text { ОT رطَّه: رطّبته } \\
& \text { الثغلب: + ويطلى رالى } \\
& \text { " مفـة طلاء: طلاءء آخر }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { "المتولّدة: المتولّد DOT }
\end{aligned}
$$

 يلحقَ

 إذا خلط الأفيـن بلبن وشيء سكّن أوجاع النقرس الحارّ^^ المرّى
 يؤخذ صندل أحمر وصندل أصفر وشياف ماميثا ودقيق شعير 1480 من كلّ واحد مثقالان وأهيون وأقاقيا وزعفران ودقيق عدس من



عنب الثعلب ودهن الورد وبيـاض البيض ويطلى به' إن شـاء اللّه تعالى.

 عـجمـه مـدقـوق وسـذاب مـدقـوق


 حلّل" وجعه إن شـاء اللّه. أو يطبخ أصـل قتّاء الحمـار بالخلّ 'به: + نافع
B '، وللنقرس: صفة دواء اللنقرس Tالبرودة: البرد T T
o
T- :أو....الموضرينع

B
'النسر: تيس B النسر B B
"الغنم: النغم

"الموضع: + غاية حلل وجعه T

Tr


 يعـرض في أسـفـل البـدن من عـرق النســاء والنقـرس وعـلاج ذلك " باختصــــار وإيجـاز " وباللّه" التـوفيق وعليـه الاعتـمـاد 1500

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { 'ويوضت: ورضـع } \\
& \text { 「 } \\
& \text { 'ويستعمل: واستعمل O } \\
& \text { T- الحارّة } \\
& \text { O- - الأدهان الحارةّ: } \\
& \text { التي: الاني } \\
& \text { BT } \\
& \text { T مداواة: مداواتها ومداواة } \\
& \text { " } \\
& \text { B إِيجاز: وانجاز" } \\
& \text { "وباللّه، . والتوكّل: واللّه سبحانـ وانه وتعالى الموفق اللصواب برحمته والاعتماد } \\
& \text { Tالتوكل بمعونته والحمد لله وحده }
\end{aligned}
$$

## ARABIC TEXT <br> 237 <br> والتوكَّل

'والتـوكّل: + فلنبـدأ الآن في المقـالة السـابعـة ألتي هي آخـر هذا الكتـاب إن شـاء اللّه تعالى كملت المقالة السـادسـة من كتاب زاد المسـافر والحمــد لله كثيرا B + فلنقل الآن في المقالة السابعة التي هي آخر الكتاب إن شـاء اللّه عزّ وجلّ وهو حسبي ونعم الوكيل D + فلنقل الآن المقالة السـابعـة التي هي آخر هذا الكتاب وصلّ اللّه على سيدنا محمد وآله وصحبه وسلام
http://taylorandfrancis.com

## TRANSLATION

In the name of God, the Merciful, the Compassionate.
The sixth treatise, consisting of 20 chapters, from the book Provisions for the Traveller, composed by the physician Aba Ja'far Aḥmad ibn Abi Khālid, may God have mercy upon him, treating the diseases which occur in the genitals

When the Creator, to Whom belong glory and greatness, wanted [to ensure] the survival of the species of animals, He created procreative organs for all of them, which he provided with an innate power, characteristic to them and creating delight. [By this] He evoked in the soul which has these organs at its disposal, the love and ardent desire to use them. He endowed the act of sexual intercourse with an unfailing and never absent sense of great pleasure, so that the species of animals would survive, and mankind would not hate sexual intercourse. For this would be the end of procreation.

But since procreation requires two animals, namely, male and female, He created for the one - may He be blessed and exalted -
organs fitted for the reception of the sperm, and for the other organs capable of emitting sperm. As far as position, size, structure and nature are concerned, He made these organs in the best possible and most suitable way.

We do not find God's handiwork emitting and ejaculating semen without the [proper] conduit for its outward passage, nor do we see His handiwork in the woman for receiving the sperm without the [proper] cavity for accepting and retaining it. Rather, we find that these organs are formed and made in the best possible form, and with utmost perfection, according to the use of each of them. God be blessed, the most perfect Creator.

These procreative organs, namely, the male and female genitals, are subject to different diseases, which consequently change the activities for which they are created and disposed to by nature. I will mention in this sixth treatise these diseases, their effective causes, symptoms, and their treatment. We will first discuss the lack of sexual intercourse and impotence. Success is given by God.

The first chapter of the sixth treatise: On the lack of sexual intercourse and impotency

I say that the penis has been endowed with a natural, special function, which has not been acquired, but is there from the beginning, like the natural activities of the other organs. This can be seen in the fact that the moment that someone desires sexual intercourse or conjures it up in his imagination, a flatulence is stirred up and descends from the heart to the penis through
connecting veins. Then it enters the hollow nerve of the penis, which consequently is blown up and stands erect. This completes the natural activity for which it was created.

The power of erection reaches [the penis] from the heart, for the heart sends the animal pneuma everywhere in the body. The sperm reaches [the penis] from the brain, while lust comes from the liver. Some men who have a strong flatulency but only little moisture, may achieve an erection but not an ejaculation of sperm. Others with much moisture, but no inflating wind, involuntarily ejaculate sperm without an erection. Still others have sexual lust, but achieve no erection and ejaculate no sperm.

As the power of sensation and movement reaches the veins from the brain, and the power of pulsation and life reaches the arteries from the heart, so a power reaches the whole body from the testicles. This power causes males to be masculine and females to be feminine.

Much heat moves from the testicles to all of the body, therefore someone who is castrated cannot grow a beard; his body is hairless, while his veins are like those of a woman. He does not desire sexual intercourse, nor does his soul.

Since the testicles, as I explained, give the body warmth and strength, which are the cause of the survival of the species and of reproduction, Galen said that they rank among the principal organs. ${ }^{1}$ The reason for this is that they greatly transform the sperm which collects in them and passes on to the penis. The power for sexual intercourse will only be at its best, when the temperament of the testicles is warm and moist, in a balanced

[^63]measure or close to a balance, for warmth increases lust, while moisture increases sperm. If, however, the temperament of the testicles is changed very much, the power for sexual intercourse will not be proper and balanced. If, for instance, warmth and dryness dominate the temperament of someone's testicles, this man will only have meagre sperm, because of the dryness, while his lust for sexual intercourse will [still] be strong because of the warmth and will pass quickly. In case he masturbates, this will cause him harm. If cold and dryness dominate someone's testicles, he will not desire sexual intercourse because of the cold, while he will only have meagre sperm because of the dryness. If, however, cold and moisture dominate his testicles, he will have little desire for sexual intercourse because of the cold, while he will have much sperm because of the moisture.

Aristotle the philosopher said that well-haired human beings and thickly feathered birds have much sexual intercourse. This is because much hair and many feathers only originate from excessive warmth and from much moisture. And both these properties, namely, warmth and moisture, are necessary for sexual intercourse and help someone to perform frequently. ${ }^{2}$ But a third property, on which the performance of intercourse depends, is equally necessary, namely, the inflating wind. And because of the philosopher's statement all the leading doctors said that when these three properties, namely, warmth, moisture and wind, combine in a food item or remedy, this produces sperm and increases the power for sexual intercourse. And if not all these properties, but rather only two of them [combine in a food

[^64]item or remedy], it is still better than only one property. If someone knows this maxim and knows which kinds of food contain those three properties, or two or one, he will be able to combine them from two kinds of food or more. For each of these properties is by itself incapable of producing sperm.

Chickpeas, for instance, contain these three properties, for they are warm and moist, produce winds and are very nourishing. Therefore they can produce sperm on their own, so that it is not necessary to mix them with something else. Their temperament, when unmixed, is nearly the same as that of pounded and cooked wheat, especially when they are mixed with some marrow of bones. The same holds true for turnip. Beans are very flatulent and nourishing, but in nutritive quality tend to be cold. They therefore contain [only] two of the three properties required for food to produce sperm. For that reason someone who eats them should add that ingredient to them which gives them the [proper] amount of warmth required to bring them closer to the nature of sperm. Long pepper, ginger, galingale, secacul and the like are warm. So if some of these are mixed with beans one gets food which produces much sperm and increases the strength for sexual intercourse.

In the same way [different kinds of] food and remedies can be combined for someone who is too weak for coitus. Much sperm is, for instance, produced by different sorts of food such as different kinds of moist meat and of brains, yolk of eggs, figs, pine nuts, peppercorns, chickpeas and the like. [Much] sperm is also produced by different kinds of remedies, such as skink, the
remedy known as "the testicles of the fox" ${ }^{3}$ which excites the lust for sexual intercourse as much as skink. Dioscurides said that if someone holds this root in his hand it will stimulate his lust for coitus, and if he drinks it with wine it will excite him [even] more. ${ }^{4}$ Ginger also excites the lust for sexual intercourse. Galingale, red behen, white behen, sweet costus, saffron, garden cress, seed of Roman nettle, anise, and linseed, when inspissated with honey and some pepper and eaten in large quantities, stimulate the lust for coitus very much.
[Much sperm is also produced] by ingredients which are both food and remedies such as turnips, asparagus, rocket and its seed, carrots and the like. These simple remedies can be combined into compound remedies in various proportions the way we have described above. We only mention those compound remedies which we have tested and approved of ourselves.

One of these is the prescription for an electuary composed by Ibn Măsawayh. ${ }^{5}$ It strengthens potency and produces erection when one takes two dirhams ${ }^{6}$ with hot water on an empty stomach and before one goes to sleep at night: Take ginger and long pepper, of each five mithqāls; ${ }^{7}$ twenty mithqā$l s$ of peppercorns; ten mithqaals of hulled sesame; twenty mithqäls of earth-almonds; red and white hedge-mustard, of each five mithqāls; seed of Syrian onion, seed of carrot, seed of rocket, seed of Roman nettle, of ash-tree and Star-of-Bethlehem, of each

[^65]six dirhams, fifteen dirhams of the hulled seed of large pine nuts. Pulverise these ingredients, strain and knead them with liquid crystalline sugar. Eat with this the meat of small cattle, yolk of eggs, white onions, [meat] of young small birds and chickens with chickpeas, meat of one-year-old sheep boiled with carrot or turnip or rocket, and drink unaged wine. It is a good remedy, God willing.

There is also a prescription for an electuary which I have composed, which stimulates the lust for coitus and is good for cold of the kidneys, internal flatulence, and cold of the buttocks; I have tested it, approved of it and have found it to be quickly effective - success is granted by God: Take ginger, galingale, secacul, Chinese cinnamon, long pepper and linseed, of each ten mithqāls; sweetmeat and peeled sweet almonds, of each twenty dirhams; seed of rocket, seed of carrot, seed of lucerne, bishop's weed and anise, of each four mithqāls; cardamom, saffron, clove, pyrethrum, pepper, nutmeg, mace, of each two mithqāls. Pulverise, strain and knead these ingredients with skimmed honey and store them in a vessel which is smooth on the inside. Take in the morning and evening, each time the amount of one hazelnut, ${ }^{8}$ for it is a royal wonderful remedy which is quickly effective.

Prescription for an electuary which I have composed and which strengthens the potency, is beneficial for the soul, warms the body, expels flatulence from the stomach, removes cold from the kidneys and bladder, and increases one's memory; it should be taken during the winter, it warms the limbs, is good in many

[^66]ways, and is one of the royal electuaries which I have called "Security against all kinds of harm": Take Chinese cinnamon, sweet costus, Indian nard, saffron, seed of horse-fennel, ginger, leaves of dry mint, leaves of mountain-origan, pennyroyal and rind of cinnamon, of each seven mithqāls; Indian spikenard, long pepper, white and black pepper, asarabacca, seed of Roman nettle, seed of caraway, clove, galingale and secacul, of each four mithqäls; pyrethrum, cardamom, seed of radish and seed of turnip, of each two mithqāls; hulled sesame, shelled walnuts, peeled pistachio, shelled sweet almonds, seed of pine nut and sweetmeat, of each ten mithqāls. Pulverise these ingredients, strain them thoroughly, collect and knead them with skimmed origan-extract until they are [well] mixed together. Store this in a vessel smooth at the inside, fumigated with Indian aloewood. Take the amount of one walnut ${ }^{9}$ before and after the meal, for it is a good medicine, God willing.

Prescription for a popular electuary which strengthens potency, is good for those who are full with moist phlegm, for winds caused by cold, and for much cold in the buttocks: Take linseed, anise, sweetmeat, hulled sesame, and peeled sweet almonds, of each two ounces; ${ }^{10}$ pyrethrum, seed of Roman nettle, seed of rocket, seed of turnip, seed of asparagus, seed of lucerne, seed of carrot, and seed of onion, of each one ounce; secacul, galingale and mint, of each half an ounce. Pulverise, strain and knead these ingredients with skimmed honey. Take a dose from two to four mithqāls of it, for it is an excellent remedy.

[^67]Another ingredient which strengthens potency is cow's milk, and its by-products. Or take half a dirham of clove, pound it and drink it with fresh milk, or the wood of galingale and keep this in the mouth, for it produces a strong erection. Or pulverise pyrethrum, moisten half a dirham of it with oil of jasmine, rub one's penis with it, eat ginger, secacul and walnut preserves, and drink syrup of honey and juice of carrots. Or take seed of rocket and seed of the ash-tree, which is the seed of the dardär, of each one part; then pound these ingredients into a fine substance and swallow two dirhams with diluted wine. Insert heating enemas and rub the penis and testicles with oil of gillyflower, or oil of narcissus, or ben oil, or oil of nard, or oil of costus. Or take black ants with two wings, put them alive into a vial-flask, pour good oil of jasmine over them, hang them in the sun for five days, purify the oil and rub with it the abdominal wall and the penis, for it produces an erection.

Prescription for a beverage composed by myself, which stimulates the lust for sexual intercourse, produces abundant sperm, is beneficial for stomach, kidneys and liver, as well as for those diseases caused by cold in the intestines, and which heats the body and has been tested by myself: Take seed of fennel, anise, seed of wild carrot, leaves of mint, water-mint, pennyroyal, wild origan and seed of rocket, of each 20 dirhams; 100 dirhams of seedless raisins. Collect these ingredients, macerate them in ten rattls of very hot water and leave them in it for a day and a night, then cook it over a gentle fire until one half is left, macerate and purify it. Pour the water back into the pot with an equal amount of origan-extract, and cook it with the
following ingredients: saffron, ginger, galingale, clove, long pepper, Chinese cinnamon, secacul, smaller cardamom, sweet costus and mastic, of each one dirham. Pulverise, pound and bind them loosely in a fine piece of cloth. Cook this with the water and origan-extract over a gentle fire while immersing it time and again until it gets the consistency of rosewater-syrup. Leave it until it has cooled off, then put it in a pot. Take a dose of one ounce dissolved in hot water, for it is an exquisite drink. If one adds to it one raṭl of the extract of carrot when it is cooking it strengthens one's potency [even] more.

When we have ascertained that the cause of impotence is heat and dryness, we forbid the patient to take of those hot remedies which we have mentioned above, and prescribe that he drink curdled milk, especially of a cow, and to eat fresh fish, wildamaranth, orache, gourd and the like. He should anoint himself with cold, moist oils, and with extract of barley and extract of roasted gourd in order to moisten the testicles and to cool their heat. He should rub the penis and testicles with oil of violets, oil of seed of gourd, oil of sesame, oil of nenuphar and the like.

We have found other means as well which, when applied together with the remedies mentioned by us above, strengthen the sexual lust and increase [sexual] activity, such as to relieve the heart of anxiety and to be always joyful. This conforms with the statement of Polemon, author of the Firāsa, for he said that there are various incentives which excite sexual lust, each of these both seeking to arouse it and, [once it is aroused], serving to increase it. These include affectionate words, showing passion, kissing
the cheeks, fondling with the hand, ${ }^{11}$ licking with the tongue, joy over the sight of the beloved, expressing one's devotion to the beloved and refraining from dwelling on grievances [against her]. These means and the like increase [sexual] activity and lust.

## Chapter two: On priapism

When the veins and the nerves which are in the penis fill with flatulence, the penis stands erect and swells. If the penis becomes long and swollen and stays in this state for a while and is constantly erect and stretched, but one has no desire nor lust for coitus, it is a disease which in Greek is called "priapismos".

It is caused by a thick flatulent wind or by a viscous moisture with balanced heat. If the erection is caused by a wind, it comes and passes quickly, but if it is caused by a moisture there is no quick change as in the case of an erection caused by wind. Galen said that the remedies which stimulate [the lust] for coitus are harmful for this disease.

If we want to treat this malady, we [should] use remedies with a contrary effect, by which I mean cold remedies with little flatulence with which the back [of the patient], his penis and testicles should be rubbed, such as extract of black nightshade and of purslane, duck-weed, extract of sempervivum, henbane, lettuce and oil of roses with ceruse, acacia with vinegar, and the like. One should tie to his back a plate of lead, and one should

[^68]take seed of rue, or seed of lettuce, or seed of purslane, or some coriander, with one habba ${ }^{12}$ of camphor or seed of chaste-tree. He should make an effort to sit and sleep on cold cushions and bedding.

Galen maintained that the women of the inhabitants of Athens used to spread chaste-tree and then sleep upon it during their high festivals so that the lust for coitus would leave them. ${ }^{13}$ They used to call this plant agnos, because this word is in the language of the Syriac-speakers in Syria derived from the notion of chastity.
[The patient] should sleep on one of his sides, but not on his back. For when his back gets warm, the veins necessarily get warm [too] and become very wide. Thereupon many flatulences will go forth from them and stream to the nerve of his penis, so that it will stretch and he will then be aroused to sexual intercourse.

A good treatment for this disease is to take opium and camphor, to mix them with oil of roses and to rub with some of it on the penis and the hips. One should, however, avoid hot foods and hot drinks, God Almighty willing.

Chapter three: On the involuntary flow of sperm

A constant involuntary flow and excretion of sperm, without lust or enjoyment, is caused either by weakness of the retentive power in the seminal vesicles, in which case there is no erection, or by

[^69]an affliction occurring in these vesicles, comparable to a spasm. This spasm causes the expelling power which is in the vesicles to expel the sperm, as in the case of epilepsy, and this is accompanied by an erection. A constant excretion of sperm resulting from amorous toying, is caused either by the quantity of sperm when it has increased [much] or by its quality when it has become hot and sharp or thin and watery.

If we want to treat this we order the patient to eat cold food such as lettuce, purslane, orache, gourd, wild-amaranth, cucumber, [another kind of] cucumber, watermelon and everything which is cold and moist or cold and dry, such as sumac, vinegar, unripe, sour grapes and the like. He should anoint his penis and back with cold remedies such as extract of black nightshade and henbane or extract of purslane or oil of roses with litharge and ceruse. At bedtime he should also take cold remedies and lie in cold bedding. He should try to eat hemp, and he should take two dirhams of the meal of acorn every day with astringent wine, and two dirhams of the seed of lettuce with cooked lentils or with extract of purslane.

A remedy which extinguishes the lust for sexual intercourse and which dries up the sperm is to take seed of hemp and seed of purslane, of each two dirhams; this should be taken with the juice of expressed purslane.

A remedy which stops the flow of sperm and an ejaculation caused by amorous toying, and which extinguishes the lust for sexual intercourse is to take flower of the pomegranate, seed of purslane, seed of lettuce, seed of hemp, of each two mithqāls; seed of aneth, seed of rue and seed of waybread, of each one
mithqāl. Pulverise and strain these ingredients and let the patient take one mithqall of it on an empty stomach with cold water. Or take rue and seed of henbane, of each one part; pulverise this and give him one mithqāl with juice of myrtle and vinegar, for it is good for frequent ejaculations caused by amorous toying. Or take seed of chaste-tree and seed of rue, of each two dirhams; one dirham of the flower of the pomegranate. These ingredients should be pulverised, strained and taken with hot water. The patient should try to take cold baths and avoid hot foods and hot drinks.

Chapter four: On the nocturnal emission of sperm during the sleep

A nocturnal emission of sperm during the sleep does not occur among young boys because their veins are soft and light, full with moisture, while the heat [of their bodies] is not strong. But when they grow up and the substance of reproduction comes into being in them and their body heat develops and strengthens and the channels of their veins become wide, the natural inclination is aroused to expel that substance when it increases in them, so that this is achieved by means of a nocturnal emission.

This occurrence of a nocturnal emission caused by much sperm collected near the opening of the channel, as we have mentioned, is not the same as what happens because of the longing and craving of the soul. For in this latter case the soul visualises much of that very object of its longing and desire as if
it were next to it, so that the natural inclination for sexual intercourse is aroused, thus resulting in a nocturnal emission.

A nocturnal emission can also occur because sometimes a man sees a woman and longs for her. When he is asleep and imagines because of the desire of his soul that he has sexual intercourse with her, he has a nocturnal emission. This happens because the imagination of the soul is always so much connected with the state of the body that someone can have such fantasies during his sleep as may do his soul harm, because of the thickness of the many humours, as if he is carrying a heavy burden. The contrary will happen when the body is light, clean of residues, for then he will have the sensation during his sleep as if he is flying or running or something similar.

A nocturnal emission occurs only when one has a long and deep sleep. If, however, one does not have a quiet sleep but is frightened or awakened during any part of it, one will not emit much sperm, [or at least not enough] to require ritual purification from it.

When someone suffers frequently from nocturnal emissions it may be necessary to treat him in the same manner as someone suffering from a permanent erection, as we have mentioned. He should avoid sleeping on his back, rub his thighs and penis with cooling remedies such as lettuce, purslane, coriander, henbane, black nightshade and the like. He should eat cold food such as lettuce, purslane, orache, gourd, watermelon, cucumber, plums, waybread and the like. He should sleep on cold beds, try to eat hemp and take seed of lettuce. He should anoint his penis and testicles with camphor and extract of roses.

Chapter five: On ulcers and tumours which break out on the penis

Ulcers, tumours and pustules may occur on the penis, caused by superfluities which descend to it from the whole body. The occurrence of such [ailments] may [easily] be recognised because the penis is an external organ, and one can diagnose the cause of the ailment from the temperament of the patient.

If we see on the penis an ulcer without a tumour, we treat it with a remedy with the following composition: Take burned papyrus, ceruse, and litharge, of each two mithqāls; burned dry gourd, and the horned poppy collyrium, of each one mithqaal. Pulverise and strain these ingredients, and treat the ulcer with it together with oil of roses, for this will be its healing and cure.

If the ulcer is very moist, we treat it with the burned rind of the pine nut and haematite. If the patient feels itching in his penis, he should take some saffron and some camphor, pound every ingredient to its proper consistency, and mix [this powder] with water. Hereupon he should inject it up his urethra.

If tumours appear on the penis, we treat them with a plaster which I have tried and found to be good; its composition is: Take cadmia, ceruse, litharge, and the horned poppy collyrium, of each one mithqāl; saffron, acacia, and flower of the pomegranate, of each half a mithqāl. Pulverise and sieve these ingredients, take two dirhams of white wax with a sufficient amount of oil of roses, melt the wax together with the oil of roses, and mix the ingredients with it until it becomes a soft salve. Smear some of this on the tumours on the penis and buttocks, for it is a good remedy, God Almighty willing.

Composition of a plaster prescribed by Galen for a tumour and swelling of the penis: Take leaves of a grape vine and frankincense, of each one dirham, and four dirhams of ceruse. Pound this with water, smear it on the tumour, and rub it with seawater. ${ }^{14}$ When one takes egg white and oil of roses with some saffron or red myrrh, and smears it on the tumour, it is also a good remedy, God Almighty willing.

A good treatment, with God's permission, for a pustule appearing on the penis and buttocks is the remedy with the following composition: Take burned borax and ashes of the branches of a grape vine, of each one part; pound this with water and put it on the pustule, for it will eliminate it and cleanse it, God Almighty willing.

Chapter six: On tumours which break out on the testicles

When superfluous matter of the body reaches the testicles, it leads to the outbreak of a tumour. If that matter is hot, the colour of the tumour will be red and yellow; moreover; there will be sharp pain, heavy and throbbing. But if that matter is cold, the colour of the tumour will be the same as that of the body and there will be no pain or throbbing. If the cause of the tumour is an injury, such as a blow or contusion and the like, the patient may know how he got it.

When we want to treat a tumour which has occurred on the testicles, we have to pay attention [to the following]. If it is

[^70]caused by hot matter which we can deduce from the symptoms mentioned above, we prescribe the bleeding of the veins of the patient or the placement of cupping-glasses on his back and seek to rid him of these hot superfluities by means of laxatives. Then one should look after the tumour and treat it with plasters. Take, for instance, leaves of boxthorn, dry and burn them, take their ashes, pound them with oil of roses on a pounding-stone and smear it on the tumour. Or plaster the tumour with Cimolian earth with black nightshade and saffron. Or take meal of barley, cook it with honey and water and smear this on the tumour. Or cook beans with wine and put it on the tumour. Or take a proper amount of the meal of peeled beans, cook this with water and oil of roses, smear it on a piece of cloth and bind this on the tumour. Or take a piece of fired earthenware, pulverise it into a fine powder, mix it with some oil from green, unripened olives and smear it on the tumour. Or take leaves of alkekengi, meal of barley, yolk of an egg and oil of roses; prepare a plaster from it and apply it, God Almighty willing.

This is the composition of a plaster which I have tested, prescribed by Ishăq ibn Sulaymann for a tumour of the testicles caused by a thick flatulence: Take leaves of red roses, leaves of violets, and red and white sandalwood, of each four dirhams; the root and seed of marshmallow, of each five dirhams; three dirhams of the horned poppy collyrium; six dirhams of the leaves of wild mallow. Pulverise and knead these ingredients with juice of black nightshade until it becomes like honey, and drip oil of roses into it. Plaster this on the tumour three times a day, for it is a good remedy, God Almighty willing.

If the tumour is caused by cold matter we prescribe that the patient take seedless raisins and cumin, pounded with water, and plaster them on the tumour. Or take seedless raisins, black caraway, and boiled beans, of each one part; pound these ingredients with oil of roses and dress the tumour with it. Or take meal of lupine, knead it with oil of roses and dress the tumour with it. Or take melilot, cook it with inspissated wine, pound and mix it with the yolk of an egg and with meal of wheat and dress the tumour with it. Or take bdellium, macerate it in inspissated wine with pulverised white ceruse and dress the tumour with it. There is a similar prescription for another plaster for a tumour of the testicles caused by cold and coarse superfluities: Take flower of the pomegranate, meal of beans, meal of chickpeas, camomile, of each four mithqāls; frankincense, red myrrh, and black caraway, of each one dirham. Pulverise, sieve and bind these ingredients with the fat of the kidneys of a goat, wax, and oil of gillyflower, or bind them with the yolk of eggs, the marrow [of the bones] of a cow, and oil of sesame. Plaster this on the testicles, for it is a good remedy, God Almighty willing.

Chapter seven: On ulcers which break out on the testicles

If vesicatory ulcers occur on the testicles, it is necessary to take [as a remedy] for it the so-called Cimolian earth, which should be well pounded with water and plastered on the place [of the ulcer]. It should be left alone until it has dried up, then it should be washed with lukewarm water. Or take acacia and ceruse, pound
this with oil of roses and plaster it on the ulcers. Or take the ashes of the wood of a grape vine, pound it with water and natron, and plaster it on the place. Or take litharge, pound it with cadmia and oil of roses, and plaster it on the place, for it is a good remedy, God Almighty willing.

Prescription for a plaster, proven by experience, which is good for a consumptive itch in the testicles caused by sharp yellow bile, especially when it is mixed with sharp blood: Take half an ounce of the marrow [of the bones] of a cow; one ounce of oil of roses; six dirhams of ceruse; one dirham of white wax; acacia and seed of roses, of each two dirhams. Pound the dry ingredients and mix them with the oils, prepare a salve from it and smear some of it [on the itchy spot], for it is a good remedy, God Almighty willing.

Prescription for a plaster good for itching occurring to the testicles and proven by experience: Take six dirhams of ceruse; two dirhams of yellow sulphur; and one dirham of opium. Pound these ingredients with boiled down wine or with vinegar and plaster it on the place [of the itching]. If there is an open sore on the testicles caused by sweat, take [as a remedy] for it gallnuts and alum; pound this thoroughly and sprinkle some of it on the wound. If there is a fissure in the testicles, one should take resin, dilute it with oil of roses, mix it with egg yolk and plaster it on the place [of the fissure] for it is a good and beneficial remedy, God Almighty willing.

Chapter eight: On ruptures and scrotal hernia occurring in the testicles

Whenever ruptures occur in the peritoneum of the abdominal wall and in the part of it which is connected with the testicles, it is always caused either by strenuous activity, such as the carrying of a heavy burden with a full stomach, a violent cough, a loud cry, sexual intercourse with a full stomach, and likewise a fight, or by viscous moisture. This loosens one of the organs so that it leaves its position and assumes another one which is not appropriate to it, due to the tearing of the membrane which separates them. This tear in the membrane cannot be healed, because that which is torn off from its nerve or has come loose from it neither grows nor heals. Only a small rupture can be healed by means of cauterisation, which prevents the rupture from enlarging through the shrinking of the ends of the nerve and of the peritoneum. This holds true especially in the case of boys.

If a rupture occurs in adult men, they should be ordered to avoid a full stomach, sexual intercourse, fatigue, and strenuous activities. They should rest regularly and remain calm. They should bind on the rupture either a piece of lead convex-shaped like a spoon, keeping it constantly bound to the injury with bandages made of cloth, or little balls filled with cotton, tied to it by means of bandages. For this prevents the rupture from enlarging. One should, moreover, smear under the lead an astringent liniment which dissolves the winds which pass to it from time to time, as, for instance, that which is prepared from
aloe, myrrh, the male species of frankincense, lycium, saffron, acacia, extract of Maltese mushroom, false bdellium, and the like.

But if the rupture becomes so large that one of the intestines move towards it, it weakens and oppresses the patient and prevents him from stretching himself and from making any but the slightest movements. The treatment of such a case is difficult; the physicians only treat it, as far as I have seen, by administering him those drugs which soften the stomach and dissolve winds which have expanded, such as seed of sagapenum, seed of bdellium, a powder of seeds, an electuary of spices, the electuary of cumin, shakzināy $\bar{a}^{15}$ or itriful kabir ${ }^{16}$ and the like. They apply to the rupture plasters with a contracting astringent power and forbid the patient to take coarse food producing winds.

A similar prescription for a plaster, good for ruptures and for the testicles, is, for instance, [one I found] in the manuscript of Sabūr: Take mastic, rinds of frankincense, nuts and leaves of the cypress, myrrh, sarcocol, and fish glutin, of each one part. Pound and dilute the glutin with wine vinegar, knead the other ingredients with it, and apply this to [the affected place], God Almighty willing. ${ }^{17}$

Prescription for another plaster good for scrotal hernia: Take nut of cypress, rind of pomegranate, acacia, and fish glutin, of each one part. Pulverise, sieve and knead these ingredients with vinegar and oil of roses, smear this on a piece of cloth and put it

[^71]on the testicles. Dioscurides maintained that the nut of the cypress is good for those suffering from ruptures, because it dries the organs which came loose because of the moisture, and gives them strength and firmness by expelling the moisture which causes the loosening, without attracting to the organs any other moisture. The leaves of the cypress have the same effect as the nuts. ${ }^{18}$

Prescription for another [plaster] good for scrotal hernia: Take myrrh, frankincense, and marshmellow, of each one part. Pulverise, sieve and knead these ingredients with egg white and smear it on the testicles, for it is a good remedy, God Almighty willing.

Prescription for a remedy good for scrotal hernia which I tried myself several times and approved of: Take acacia, flower of the pomegranate, and nut of cypress, of each one part; mastic, cumin, saffron, sarcocol, gum tragacanth, and dragon's blood, of each half a part. Pulverise, sieve and knead these ingredients with oil of roses and vinegar until it becomes a salve. Then smear some of it [on the hernia] for it is good and tested by experience. Good for scrotal hernia of boys is the following remedy: Take bdellium, pound it, macerate it and put it in a plaster on the testicle, for it is a good and beneficial remedy, God Almighty willing.

[^72]Chapter nine: On the retention of the menstrual blood

Women [usually] begin to menstruate when they become fourteen years old, or at the earliest at the age of twelve. Menstruation in females can be compared to puberty in males. It is caused by the fact that the bodies of women are cold and moist, and retain much moisture. This moisture then streams to the bottom of their belly and then issues forth from them, just as superfluous moisture streams out of trees in the form of sap. When the menstruation is unbalanced, superfluities are expelled from the bodies of women. But when the emanation of the menstrual blood changes, becoming more or less or ceasing completely, many different diseases consequently occur to them.

The retention of the menstrual blood occurs in two ways, namely, natural and accidental. It is natural when a woman becomes 50 years old, in the case of some women when they become 60 years, and others 35 years, especially with someone whose flesh has become soft and very fat. The accidental retention occurs when it is caused by a faculty, an organ, or by matter. It is caused by a faculty when a natural or accidental bad temperament dominates the organ in which it is present. When the cause is an organ, it can be the substance of the uterus or its veins. It is the substance of the uterus when it is thick and cold. This can happen by nature, or by accident as, for instance, in the case of stenosis caused either by too much flesh and fat, which narrow the openings of the blood vessels, or by an obstruction caused by coarse viscous humours. In the case of [accidental retention] caused by matter, the menstrual blood is retained
because of its quantity, or its quality, or its movement. [It is retained] because of its quantity when it is meagre, which can be caused either by a reducing regimen or by heavy physical exercises. Rufus said that women who work and engage in much activity do not need the emission of much menstrual blood, but that women who stick to a calm and comfortable life and eat much, need a heavy menstruation. ${ }^{19}$ [The menstrual blood is retained] because of the quality of its matter when it is, for instance, thick, viscous, or excessively cold or dry. For when blood becomes thick, it closes the passages so that it does not flow down smoothly anymore; likewise, when the blood is cold or dry, it does not flow smoothly through the veins. As for the case when the blood is retained because of the movement of the matter, this happens when the blood streams towards another organ as, for instance, that which streams from the veins of the buttocks, or by a nosebleed. Rufus has said that some women have many nosebleeds, other women lose much blood because they suffer from haemorrhoids, other women bring up blood from their chest, and [still] other women lose blood because of a rupture of a vein. ${ }^{20}$ All these kinds of afflictions and similar ones stop the streaming of the menstrual blood.

The menstruation of a woman may also be corrupted by continuous sorrow or anxiety or similar psychical afflictions, such as anger and fear, for all these afflictions cause corruption and retention of the menstruation. If, however, the menstruation [of a woman] is retained for a long time, it causes diseases which

[^73]affect the stomach, so that she loses her appetite, is constantly nauseous, and craves for bad food, such as charcoal, earth, and the like. But it can also cause other afflictions, apart from those which we have described, as, for instance, pain in the loins, neck, head and eyes, or burning fevers. The colour of such women's urine will tend towards black and red, and sometimes it will look like the juice of fresh meat. Their bodies will, in short, be susceptible to some serious diseases, such as dropsy, consumption, and a humour consisting of black bile.

Rufus the physician said that when a doctor knows the cause of retention of the menstrual blood, he will be able to treat it in the easiest way. ${ }^{21}$ The retention of the menstrual blood should be treated by eliminating its causes. One should start its treatment by bleeding the woman from her foot, namely, from the vein called the "saphenous." For venesection in the foot, although it attracts the menstrual blood in a direction opposite to the one it [naturally] tends to take, helps to let it flow copiously. If we want to perform this [procedure], we plan to do so on the third and fourth day of the menstruation of the woman. Instead of bleeding, one can also put cupping glasses on the anklebones. When we bleed the saphenous vein or prescribe the cupping of one of the anklebones, we [at first] draw [only] a small amount of blood. The next day we draw an equal amount of blood from the other foot.

Galen stated in his work on epidemic diseases that, in the case of a woman whose menstrual blood had been retained for eight months, so that she was in a state of utter emaciation and had no

[^74]sexual lust anymore, he drew blood from her during three days as soon as he saw these symptoms. On the first day the amount of one and a half ratl, ${ }^{22}$ on the second day one rattl, and on the third day eight ounces. When he had treated her in this way, her body recovered its natural heat within a few days. ${ }^{23}$

With some women their menstrual blood may flow copiously without the above-mentioned regimen by means of water-mint and garden-mint, when cooked in liquid honey which is then taken; or when one dries these ingredients, pounds them, sieves them, and strews them on the liquid honey. The best time to take this drug is after one has taken a bath, when the body becomes dry. They should be ordered to take a bath regularly and to drink after the bathing two daniqs ${ }^{24}$ of myrrh with one daniq of castoreum, when pounded and diluted in liquid honey or in inspissated grapes.

In a case like this, one can also administer to them hiera fiqra,${ }^{25}$ and especially when prepared with Chinese pepper. Let them take those drugs which make the urine flow abundantly, such as fennel, anise, celery, cumin, bishop's weed, Indian nard, cinnamon, the flower of lemon-grass, and the like. Or let them take the decoction of absinth or the decoction of roots. Or take water in which three ounces of beans have been cooked, add to it five dirhams of the extract of nard and half a dirham of galbanum.

[^75]Mix this well and let them take it lukewarm, for it makes the menstrual blood flow copiously. Or give them one dirham of the electuary called dehamurt $\bar{a}^{26}$ with water in which savin and anise have been cooked. One may also let them take from the following remedies.

One of these is the prescription for a decoction which makes the menstrual blood flow and which may be taken at any time: Take water-mint, mountain-mint, lavender, horehound, savin, absinth, common germander, and cat-thyme, of each two mithqāls; seed of fennel, anise, seed of celery, bishop's weed, seed of wild carrot, root of lemon-grass, and silk, of each two dirhams; rind of cinnamon, the long species of birthwort, gentian, berries of laurel, and Syrian rhubarb, of each one mithqāl. Collect and macerate these ingredients for one night in two ratls of hot water; then it should be cooked lightly, and four ounces of it taken every day with oil of two almonds, God Almighty willing.

Prescription for the decoction of roots which makes the menstrual blood stream abundantly, taken from the Kitāb al-najh by Ibn Māsawayh: Take four mithqāls of madder; five mithqäls of dittany; three mithqāls of anise; rind of the root of fennel, and root of celery, of each ten mithqāls; five mithqāls of wild carrot; ten mithqāls of red beans; three mithqāls of mastic; horehound, mountain-mint, and bishop's weed, of each three mithqäls. Cook this in five ratls of water until one ratl is left, strain it and let one take one third of a raṭl, lukewarm, with one dirham of the oil of

[^76]bitter almonds and one mithqāl of the oil of sweet almonds. But if it is not hot, one should take it with one mithqāl of the oil of the castor oil plant. This will make the menstrual blood flow abundantly, God Almighty willing. ${ }^{27}$

Prescription for a powder composed by Ishaqq ibn 'Imran for young and adult women who cannot menstruate, and for winds of the uterus which tend towards coarse superfluity: Take savin, and seed of celery, of each ten dirhams; five dirhams of Chinese cinnamon; rind of cinnamon, Indian nard, and Roman absinth, of each two mithqāls; flower of lemon-grass, seed of fennel, and anise, of each one mithqāl; and turbith with a white, hollow stem, [an amount] equal to that of all the other ingredients. Pound and sieve these ingredients, stir the turbith alone with one and a half ounce of the oil of sweet almonds, and mix all of this with two mithqals of the powder in water in which mint, thyme, anise, and seed of celery have been cooked. They should drink this every other day until they have finished it, God Almighty willing.

Prescription for a pill which I have composed for the retention of the menstrual blood and for diseases of the uterus caused by cold and coarse superfluities. It is also good, with God's permission, for the diseases of the joints caused by phlegm and black bile. I have tried it and approved of it: Take two mithqäls of hiera fiqra prepared with socotric aloe; Roman absinth, turbith with a white, hollow stem, of each one mithqāl; scammony, opopanax, gum-ammoniacum, sagapenum, blue bdellium, and castoreum, of each half a mithqa $\bar{l}$; rind of cinnamon, savin, seed

[^77]of the broad species of fennel, anise, seed of celery, mint, and flower of lemon-grass, of each half a dirham. Pound and sieve these ingredients; macerate the resins in the extract of thyme or celery, then knead this with the other mixtures, form little pills of it, and dry them in the shade. The patient should take of it, according to his ability, a dose ranging from two dirhams up to two mithqāls, with water in which mint and thyme have been cooked, God willing.

When the menstrual blood of a woman is retained, one can also administer her half a dirham of castor with two ounces of the extract of water-mint, or give her half a dirham of the rinds of cinnamon pounded with the extract of mint. She may also use this as a suppository. If she takes one hazelnut of opopanax which has been burned with honey, with hot water, it will make her menstrual blood flow copiously. When one takes odiferous reed or uses it as a suppository, it will make the menstrual blood stream copiously. Oil of lily has the same effect when it is dripped into the uterus. One can also use pessaries which make the menstrual blood stream quickly, such as the one made from mint, centaury, and gentian, when prepared with oil of lily and inserted. Or take red myrrh and Yemenite alum, of each one part, pound, sieve and knead this with oil of lily, and apply it. Or take absinth and myrrh, pound and knead this with oil of lily, make a suppository of it and apply it. Or take natron and hyssop, of each one part; pound this into a fine powder, knead it with honey, and make a suppository of it. Or take only natron, pound and knead it with oil of sesame, and make a suppository of it. Cow's milk, when kneaded with yolk of an egg and used by a woman as a
suppository, purifies the uterus and makes her menstrual blood flow abundantly, God Almighty willing.

If, however, we want a stronger means than the ones we have mentioned, we prescribe that one take the juice of squirting cucumber, mix it with honey and prepare a suppository of it. Or take cyclamen, pound it and knead it with wine and apply it. Or take red myrrh, nigella, and mint, of each one part; pound, strain and knead this with fragrant wine, make a suppository of it and apply it to the vagina, for it makes the menstrual blood flow abundantly. The woman should anoint the opening of her uterus with oil of lily or oil of roses, so that the heat of the remedies will not harm her, and cause a tumour or wound in her uterus. It is also necessary to apply compresses for the retention of the menstrual blood, for these are certainly effective, as we have stated above. Take, for instance, camomile, marjoram, melilot, cinnamon, dill, anise, odiferous reed, root of lily, mint, rue, and the like. Take these as a simple or as a compound drug, cook them in water until they become soft, dip a sponge in this water, and use it as a compress for the uterus. Or take the water and let the woman sit in it, for it will make the menstrual blood flow abundantly. Or take the pot in which these ingredients have been cooked, cover it, make a hole in the middle of the cover and let the woman sit on it until all the vapours of the ingredients enter her. These are the [different] kinds of treatment which make the menstrual blood flow abundantly and restore its balance, God Almighty willing.

Chapter ten: On the loss of blood occurring to women

When the uterus loses more blood than necessary, it is caused by the organ itself if the veins of the uterus are [wide-] open or burst so that the blood flows out quickly, except for the case when it is pure red. It can also be caused by the matter [of the blood], either because it increases by the length of a [woman's] rest and repose, or because its quality is sharp and bitter or salty and mucous, or the blood is excessively sharp. For in this case the uterus cannot retain the blood and consequently expels it quickly. If the matter [of the blood] is bilious, the colour of the menstrual blood is yellow; if it is mucous, its colour is white; and if it is sanguine, its colour is red. This [last] kind of loss of blood will only occur when the blood of the whole body is corrupted and is drawn towards the uterus, bursting forth and streaming from the veins of the organs because of its corruption and bad quality. If a woman loses much menstrual blood, her colour will be bad, her feet will be swollen, her food will only be slightly digested, she will not have an appetite, her body will be withered, and dropsy will befall her. This will occur because her liver will become cold and its activities will become weak after the blood has burst forth.

When the menstrual blood is excessive and should be cut off, it is necessary to start its treatment with bleeding the woman from the upper parts of her body, so that the matter [of the blood] will be drawn upwards. We should do this when it has become clear to us that it is caused by an increase of blood. But when it is caused by yellow bile and its sharpness, the symptoms of which have been referred to above, we administer her those medicines
of the decoctions and electuaries which bring the yellow bile down. In the same way, if the dominant factor is the phlegm or the black bile, we treat it with those drugs specifically used to bring that phlegm down and expel it.

If the loss of blood continues after that, we treat the patient with those drugs which retain the blood, once the limbs of the woman have been firmly bound, and especially her armpits. Then we give her astringent and thickening drugs which retain the blood, such as acacia, burned coral, gum Arabic, juice of mushrooms, berries of the myrtle, flower of the pomegranate, seed of purslane, the electuary of gallnut, ${ }^{28}$ sealed earth, ${ }^{29}$ burned horn of a deer, burned cowrie, berries of the Oriental tamarisk, gallnut, and the like. These ingredients should be taken separately or together according to the strength or weakness of the disease. They should be taken with an astringent syrup, such as the one [prepared] from pomegranate, myrtle, quince, unripe, sour grapes, and the like. In general, women [suffering from it] should be given the same treatment as the one we have mentioned in the chapters on haemoptysis ${ }^{30}$ and on dysentery.

A good treatment for the excessive loss of menstrual blood, with God's permission, is to take burned horn of a deer, burned kernels of bdellium, of each one part. Pulverise this, and give her every day four dirhams with cold water. Another effective

[^78]remedy is to give her juice of purslane with one of these astringent drugs and to feed her with meat of kids, partridges, francolins, pigeons, and chickens. She should take this boiled with a little bit of vinegar, extract of dry and fresh coriander, and sumac sprinkled over it. She should take decoctions with purslane, vermicelli, rice, common millet, and the like. For fruit she should eat bitter pomegranates, bitter apples, mispels, lotus fruit, quinces, pears, and the like. She should sit down in water in which the fruit of the tamarisk, rinds of the pomegranate, gallnut, mushroom, resin of the pine nut, myrtle, roses, and the like have been boiled.

If the loss of blood continues after this regimen, cupping glasses should be placed under each breast, and much blood should be drawn forth without scarification. This is good for the loss of blood, because it causes the blood to rise. The woman should also apply one of these drugs as a suppository.

Dioscurides maintained that nard which has been prepared into a pessary and used by a woman, ends the loss of blood. ${ }^{31}$ Or take pulverised vitriol, knead it with vinegar, and let the woman use it as a vaginal suppository. ${ }^{32}$

Prescription for a pessary which is good for loss of blood: Take the electuary of gallnut, alum, gallnut, and frankincense, one part of each; pulverise, sieve, and apply this as a pessary.

Prescription for a pessary for the same ailment: Take acacia, mushrooms, and powder of frankincense; pound and knead this with vinegar, and let the woman use it as a pessary.

[^79]Prescription for pills which retain the blood bursting forth from a rupture of the veins in the uterus or in the kidneys; they should be pounded and used as a pessary in the vagina and as a suppository in the anus: Take flower of the pomegranate, burned cowrie, and acacia, two mithqāls of each; burned gallnut smothered in wine vinegar, burned papyrus, dragon's blood, sumac, aril of acorn, Armenian earth, gum Arabic, burned alum, the electuary of gallnut, one mithqāl of each; one dirham of the juice of goatsbeard; camphor and yellow amber, half a dirham of each. Pulverise, strain, and knead these ingredients with extract of waybread, or with extract of knot-grass. Make pills similar to dinars of it; let her take one pill orally, and use one pill as a pessary with extract of dates in her vagina. Or prepare some of it as a suppository, dip it in oil of roses and let her use it in the vagina and anus, for it is a good tested medicine. She should put some of it with extract of dates and of basil into her nostrils for nosebleed, God willing.

Prescription for a powder which stops the loss of blood and which has been tested: Take burned cowrie and burned horn of a deer, four mithqāls of each; flower of the pomegranate, yellow amber, coral, white țabashir, ${ }^{33}$ and red roses, two mithqāls of each. Pulverise and strain these ingredients, then take one mithqāl or more of it with an astringent wine, God, Almighty, willing.

[^80]Chapter eleven: On hysterical suffocation

Women are susceptible to a disease called called "hysterical suffocation," which lessens their appetite, makes their bodies cold and causes them to faint. Their pulse is slack and weak and sometimes stops completely. Some women, when this disease occurs to them, suffer from convulsive contractions so [severe] that they put their faces between their knees.

Galen said that he [once] saw a woman suffering from this disease who had lost her respiration and pulse as if she were dead. The only difference between her and someone dead was that she [still] had slight heat in the middle of her body. The physicians thought that she was dead; wishing to know if she was [still] breathing, they teased a piece of wool, and brought it to her nose. They thus knew that she was breathing [and therefore alive] since anything which breathes is alive. ${ }^{34}$

This disease occurs [to a woman] by reason of a surplus and corruption of her sperm when she is withheld from sexual intercourse. For then the sperm increases, corrupts and becomes like a poison. This happens mostly to widows, especially when they have given birth to many children. It can also happen to women when they have reached sexual maturity, without knowing any man. For when the sperm has collected in them, they need its emission just like men, which is a natural act. But when a woman does not have a man, the sperm is collected in her and a cold vapour arises from it to the respiratory diaphragm, because of its connection with the uterus. This causes asthma,

[^81]and because the diaphragm is connected with the throat and with the places [of origin] of the voice suffocation occurs to her, as we have explained.

This disease can also be caused by retention of the menstruation, for when the retained menstrual blood and the sperm collect in them, the disease called "hysterical suffocation" occurs to them with extreme force, especially in autumn or in winter.

The first thing we should do in our treatment of this disease, which, as we said, originates from the retention of the sperm and menstruation, is that we prescribe a vigorous massage to the hands and feet of the woman with oil of jasmine. Then she should sniff things with a disagreeable smell like castoreum, henna, tar, burned wool, soot from a lamp which has been extinguished, smoke of barley and the like. One should make her sneeze by means of castoreum, soapwort, ginger, pepper, and the like. Her lower parts should be fumigated with fragrant things, such as aloewood, musk, and costus, so that the superfluity will return downwards. A fragrant oil should be poured into her uterus, such as oil of lily, oil of ben, oil of camomile, oil of nard, or oil of jasmine, so that the sperm is drawn downwards. Cupping-glasses should be applied to her groin and abdominal wall in order to draw forth [the blood], without scarification. We should tell the midwife to rub gently the orifice of the uterus from the inside and outside with one of the oils we have mentioned. She should be administered the electuary of cumin with fresh extract of celery, or a syrup of mint, or hiera fiqrā with absinth, or one dirham of agaric with fine wine. Take for her absinth, root
of lemon-grass, camomile, wormwood, marjoram, alum, and mint; boil this and clean the uterus with it. Put something of it under her so that its vapour reaches the uterus. Administer her those drugs which dry the sperm and make the menstrual blood flow abundantly, as we have mentioned in this chapter.

Galen mentioned in his book on antidotes the composition of a drug good for hysterical suffocation, for bites of all deadly vermin, and for harsh winds. It is good and effective, God Almighty willing. Its prescription is [as follows]: Take from the juice of hemlock and henbane, four mithqals of each; castoreum, white pepper, costus, myrrh, and opium, one mithqāl of each. Pulverise all these ingredients, pour three ounces of sweet wine over it, heat it in the sun and leave it there until it coagulates. Prepare pills from it weighing one Egyptian bean, ${ }^{35}$ and the dose to be taken is one pill with three ounces of sweet wine, God willing. ${ }^{36}$

Chapter twelve: On tumours originating in the uterus

Tumours may originate in the uterus from various causes; as, for instance, a hot tumour originating from the domination of a superfluity of yellow bile in the uterus, or the one originating from a superfluity of coarse black bile, or the one originating

[^82]from a coarse wind, which is difficult to dispel. Sometimes it is caused by an injury and sometimes by the retention of the menstruation. If the tumour occurs in the front part of the uterus, it is followed by a heavy pain in the vagina with retention of urine, and if it occurs in the orifice of the uterus, it is followed by pain in the navel and stomach, and if the midwife inserts her finger, she finds the orifice of the uterus closed and hard. If the tumour is in the side of the back part of the uterus, it is followed by a heavy pain in the back, by retention of the faeces, and by pain under the epigastrium.

If the tumour originates from a hot superfluity of yellow bile or of blood, there is, besides what we have mentioned before, high fever and a burning sensation in the uterus with severe pain in that side where the tumour is, and it is accompanied by thirst and restlessness. If the tumour originates from a coarse superfluity, it will be hard and solid, [the feeling of] heaviness will be stronger than the pain, and it will be accompanied by convulsions and heaviness in the hips and back. If [the tumour of] the uterus is not healed with the right regimen and treatment, it will become worse and more serious, and it will be followed by pain in the stomach, swelling under the epigastrium, angina pectoris, languor and weakness.

We must start its treatment by examining from which cause the tumour originates. If the tumour originates from heat, which is indicated by the symptoms mentioned above, and if it is in an initial phase, we prescribe that the woman be bled from the basilic vein or the median cubital vein, and that as much blood as she can stand should be extracted. We do so if the season [of the year],
and the age and strength [of the patient] are conducive [for his cure].

Galen maintained that women suffering from tumours in their uteruses derive more benefit from venesection of their feet rather than that of other members. For venesection of the wrists is, according to him, very harmful in the case of diseases of the uterus, because it retains the menstrual blood by drawing it to the upper parts of the body, a direction opposite to the one where it should be extracted from. ${ }^{37}$

If the woman is strong we extract blood from her twice a day, in the morning and evening, but if she is weak we extract it once a day, and repeat this the next day. Then we administer to her those things which are good for hot tumours: Take, for instance, half a raṭl of extract of black nightshade, and of moist, boiled, purified alkekenji. Macerate this with ten dirhams of the core of purified Indian laburnum without its cane and seed, and with preserved roses and manna from Khurāsān, five dirhams of each. When this has been well macerated, purify it and administer it to her. Or let her take a decoction of Indian laburnum, or a decoction of jujube and sebesten. For these drugs and similar ones take away the heat and sharpness of the tumour.

In the beginning one should also plaster the uterus from the outside with repellent drugs which strengthen the organ, such as purslane, black nightshade, sempervivum, seed of fleawort, extract of waybread and of endive with oil of roses. Or take meal of lentils and meal of barley; knead this with extract of endive and oil of roses, and plaster the uterus with it, and drip into the uterus

[^83]egg white, oil of roses, fat of geese and of chickens. If the tumour is extremely hot, we should treat it with a poultice prepared from oil of roses, extract of fresh coriander, of black nightshade and of endive, with meal of barley, red sandalwood, opium, and some saffron. We should also make a salve from this and smear it on the outside, and use it internally in the form of suppositories.

If the tumour disappears by means of the treatment we have mentioned [it is well], but if not, we treat it besides with dissolving agents: Take, for instance, leaves of cabbage or endive; pulverise this into a fine substance, drip oil of roses or oil of violets onto it and let the woman use it as a suppository. Or take seed of flax, marshmallow, and fenugreek; cook this so well that it becomes like extract of barley in consistency; then dilute it with fat of geese or fat of chickens; add some saffron to it and dip a suppository in it; then the woman should use it as a suppository in the vagina. Or take melilot, boil it, pulverise it and mix it with extract of black nightshade, oil of roses and white of egg, and let the woman use it as a suppository in her vagina.

Dioscurides maintained that if nard is cooked with water and used by women as a compress for their bodies, while they are sitting in this liquid mixture, it is good for hot tumours occurring to the uterus. ${ }^{38}$

Composition of the saffron-pessary, of which Paul the physician said that it is good in the case of hot tumours, in the case that the uterus has inverted or become hard, and in the case of insufflation and winds occurring to the uterus: Take purified wax,

[^84]and marrow of a calf, eight dirhams of each; six dirhams of the marrow of a deer; fat of geese, fat of chickens, and saffron, four dirhams of each; mastic and honey, two dirhams of each; one mithqāl of hyssop. Pulverise and mix the saffron into breast milk with the other ingredients, together with a sufficient amount of oil of roses, then apply it on the outside and use it as a suppository, for it is a good and tested <medicine>, God Almighty willing. ${ }^{39}$

If the tumour is cold and coarse, symptoms of which are thickness, lightness of pain, and the other conditions of the woman, we prescribe the application of those drugs which melt and dissolve the tumour, as, for instance, when one applies a poultice prepared from fenugreek, seed of flax, melilot, mint, thyme, marjoram, water-mint and the like. These ingredients should be boiled and plastered on the uterus. Then one should take of its extract, mix it with oil of lily, or with oil of nard, and drip this into the uterus. The woman should be ordered to use it as a suppository, and she should be administered the decoction of roots with oil of two almonds, or the decoction of lemon-grass, or seed of sagapenum. She should take a bath, anoint the uterus with oil of lily, and apply dissolving salves. She should feed herself with light nourishment which does not produce superfluities in her body.

When we know that the tumour contains pus, we should apply, along with the drugs which we have mentioned, drugs which bring the tumour to ripeness and open it, such as a poultice prepared from fenugreek, linseed, meal of barley, and meal of wheat, after this has been mixed with boiled figs and excrements

[^85]of doves. From this a salve should be prepared. When the tumour has burst open and the pus reaches the bladder, give her milk of a donkey and goat, with the kernel of the seed of cucumber, and the kernel of the seed of watermelon, and the like. One may also inject into the uterus extract of barley which has been fortified with honey, for it cleans the uterus and purifies it from the matter which has burst forth in it.

A good remedy - God willing - for a chronic tumour occurring in the uterus is the next remedy. Its composition is: Take fat of geese, fat of chickens, fat of calves, and yellow wax, ten dirhams of each; five dirhams of the yolk of a roasted egg; blue bdellium and red myrrh, one mithq $\bar{a} l$ of each; half a mithq $\bar{a} l$ of saffron. Pulverise these ingredients and pound them with the egg together with wine; liquefy the different kinds of fat and the wax by means of oil of lily or oil of nard; mix everything and beat it until it becomes a smooth salve. Dip a suppository into it and insert it into the vagina; do this repeatedly, for it is a good tested medicine.

Chapter thirteen: On ulcers originating in the uterus

Ulcers and wounds may originate in the uterus from a hot tumour or an abscess which bursts open, and sometimes they occur from a hot drug which a woman takes or from a miscarriage. Symptoms of these ulcers are the discharge of [purulent] matter and a throbbing pain in the uterus with a severe burning. If the wound is cankering the colour of the [purulent] matter is black
and has a stinking smell; it is accompanied by pain and inflammation.

In this case we should order the woman to pour out in her vagina those drugs which purify the ulcers and alleviate their throbbing pain and extinguish their sharpness. Take, for instance, sap of waybread, sap of black nightshade, add to it oil of roses and inject this into the uterus. Or take egg white, milk of a woman who has given birth to a girl, extract of purslane, oil of roses, oil of the seed of a gourd, of each one part; mix this and inject it into the uterus. Or take leaves of red roses, husked barley, blossom of violets, and peeled lentils; cook and strain these ingredients and take of this liquid substance and mix it with oil of roses and some egg white and inject it into the uterus.

Let the woman take a decoction prepared from jujube, sebesten, seed of poppy, wood of licorice, seed of marshmallow, and the like; let her take as well gum Arabic, seed of purslane, Armenian earth, and gum tragacanth. Her food should consist of gourd, purslane, vermicelli, wild-amaranth, and the like. Let her sit in water in which leaves of myrtle, roses, pomegranate, lentils, rind of pomegranate, and the like have been boiled.

If the ulcers are cankering, we order the woman to use those drugs which are good for that, such as dragon's blood, frankincense, myrrh, sealed earth, saffron, the [different] species of birth-wort. ${ }^{40}$ These drugs should be taken, simple or compound; in the latter case, they should be diluted with extract

[^86]of waybread, or with extract of barley, and injected into the uterus. Sometimes the woman may also use them for a suppository, for it is a good medicine.

Good for the same affliction is to take lycium and sap of acacia; pound this and smear it on the uterus. Or take saffron, pound it with breast milk into a fine substance, mix it with gum which has been melted with oil of roses and fat of a goose; dip a suppository into this and let her use it in the vagina.

Good for itching originating in the uterus is to take saffron and camphor, one dāniq of each; two däniqs of litharge; half a dirham of seed of laurel; pulverise and mix this with egg white, oil of roses, and some wine; dip a suppository into it and use it in the vagina. If a woman feels itching and a burning pain in her uterus, take sap of purslane and linseed, pulverise the linseed, knead it with the sap and prepare a suppository from it, and let her take gum tragacanth and seed of purslane with cold water.

Dioscurides maintained that meal of [the seed of] fenugreek, when mixed with fat of a goose and used as a suppository, softens hardness of the uterus and opens its obstruction. ${ }^{41} \mathrm{He}$ also said that the sap of figs, when kneaded with egg yolk and used by a woman as a suppository, purifies the uterus and makes the menstrual blood flow copiously. ${ }^{42}$

[^87]Chapter fourteen: On prolapse of the uterus and its disappearance

Relaxation [of the ligaments] of the uterus may be caused by an excess of moisture or by a continuous sitting on cold things or by bathing in cold water. Because of this relaxation [of the ligaments], arising from what we mentioned, prolapse and protrusion of the uterus occur, as in the case of the rectum. The uterus may also leave its place and prolapse because of hard labour.

The first thing one must do to treat prolapse of the uterus is to order the woman to sleep on her back and to keep her knees together, but her lower legs apart. One should take a piece of linen cloth which should be anointed with juice of Maltese mushroom or with juice of acacia, put this on the uterus and bind it onto it. After that, she should sit down in water in which myrtle, flower and rind of the pomegranate, boxthorn and gallnut have been boiled; then one should take a piece of linen cloth, steep it in this boiled water, put it softly on the uterus and repeat this until the uterus returns to its place. The uterus should be anointed with oil of roses or oil of myrtle or oil of gillyflower. Or take the juice of acacia, of bramble and sour pomegranate; mix this and smear it on the orifice of the prolapsed uterus. Or take Armenian earth, pound it with rose water and oil of roses, and smear it on the uterus. Or take dry roses, pulverise them into a powder, and sprinkle this on the orifice of the prolapsed uterus. Or take gallnut, acacia, and flower of the pomegranate; pound this into a fine powder, and sprinkle it on the orifice of the uterus. Then put cloth bandages on it, bind them with another cloth and leave it for a while. for this makes the uterus return <to its
place>. Let the woman sneeze, for sneezing sometimes attracts the uterus and makes it return to its place.

Dioscurides maintained that if one fumigates a woman with dung of a cow it restores the condition of the prolapsed uterus. ${ }^{43}$ She should have the same treatment as that which we have mentioned in the case of the relaxation and protrusion of the rectum, God willing. ${ }^{44}$

Chapter fifteen: On the regimen good for diseases to which pregnant women are especially susceptible

Galen remarked in many places that the connection between the foetus and the uterus is like that between the fruit and the tree. For in the beginning of its generation the fruit is connected by means of weak suspensions. It therefore falls off quickly, when a strong wind blows which moves it violently. But when it grows, its connection with the tree becomes stronger, and it becomes more unlikely that it will be torn off. When it is fully-grown it falls off without anything disturbing it from the outside. Adhering to this model is, as Galen says, [the case of] the foetus. For in the beginning, when the seed has fallen into the uterus, its connection with it is weak. When it occurs to the woman that she jumps or slips and falls, that she takes a laxative or receives venesection or suffers an excessive evacuation from the openings of her veins in her buttocks, that blood bursts forth from the neck of the uterus,

[^88]or that the uterus is otherwise moved rather heavily by movements of the body or affections of the soul, the connection between the foetus and uterus is quickly severed. The same happens when the foetus is fully-grown. In the meantime, the connection between foetus and uterus is rather strong, and therefore the pregnant woman can in that time endure rather heavy movements without any harm occurring to the foetus. ${ }^{45}$

Therefore, a woman who is in the beginning of her pregnancy should not be confronted with the mentioning of different kinds of food not available at that time, for fear that her soul might desire and crave for them, while they are not available. This might cause a miscarriage. If a woman wants something available at that time, one should hasten to bring her what she wants. Pregnant women should be treated on the outside with things which strengthen them, such as oil of nard, oil of mastic, oil of absinth, or with fragrant poultices, especially in the beginning of their pregnancy.

When the days of childbirth draw close she should take baths, rub herself with relaxing oils, and feed herself with food relaxing by its nature. When the feet of the pregnant woman become swollen, they should be rubbed with oil of roses beaten with wine vinegar; one should apply to her thighs compresses of vinegar mixed with water; or one should smear on them Cimolean earth with wine-vinegar; or one should smear on the feet the mixture of a decoction of cabbage and southernwood.

[^89]When the craving for bad kinds of food befalls pregnant women, they should be ordered to exercise their bodies by means of walking and moderate movement; they should drink fragrant wine, feed themselves with fortified bread, and take after their meal pomegranate, quince and pear. If they want clay and charcoal, they should at that time be given roasted chickpeas and roasted beans, while their stomach should be treated with fragrant oils and also with fragrant poultices. One should administer them juice of quince and similar drugs which are reliable against harm, and which strengthen the stomach.

If the humours are stirred up in the body of a pregnant woman, one should administer her a laxative from the time that the foetus is four months until seven months, for this is the middle period of the pregnancy in which the connection of the foetus to the uterus is sound and strong. There is therefore minimal [risk] in proceeding in this way, but the drug should be a reliable laxative.

If a pregnant woman gets a wind in her stomach or uterus, it should be dissolved quickly with one of the following means, lest it cause a miscarriage. Prescription for a powder good for pregnant women which expels the winds, strengthens their uteruses and is good and tested: Take wild ginger, leopard's bane and seed of celery, two dirhams of each; one dirham of castoreum; the male species of frankincense and bishop's weed, three dirhams of each; twenty dirhams of crystalline sugar. Collect, pound and sieve these ingredients and then prepare powders from them, weighing between one dirham and one mithqāl, according to one's needs, God Almighty willing.

Prescription for an electuary which is good for a wind arising in the uterus, takes away pain in the uterus and stomach in the case of pregnant women, prevents miscarriage, opens an obstruction, and is quickly effective and reliable: Take seed of celery, seed of horse-fennel, bishop's weed, and ginger, two mithqāls of each; mastic, clove, smaller cardamom, and asarabacca; one mithqāl of each; Chinese cinnamon, nutmeg, castoreum, wild ginger, leopard's bane and sweet reed, half a mithqāl of each; four mithqāls of crystalline sugar. Pulverise, sieve and knead these ingredients with skimmed honey; store this and administer from it a dose varying from one dirham to one mithqäl with wine, for it is a good medicine, God Almighty willing

Prescription for a medicine which is good for difficult childbirth and of which Galen said in his book on antidotes that this medicine is good for the sting of a tarantula and poisonous scorpions: Take white pepper, thirty in number; myrrh, castoreum and storax, one mithqāl of each; two mithqāls of opium; three mithqāls of turnip; seed of celery, anise and hartwort, three mithqāls of each. Pulverise and knead this with wine, and administer one mithq $\bar{a} l$ of it with nine ounces of wine, for it is extremely [good], God Almighty willing. ${ }^{46}$

Chapter sixteen: On difficult childbirth

When a woman reaches the time which God Almighty has ordained for natural childbirth, she develops labour pains

[^90]whereby the foetus makes very heavy movements because of the little amount of food left for it. The uterus widens because of those labour pains and the expelling power which is in the uterus pushes the child so that it comes forth from the placenta.

Sometimes, however, a woman has a difficult childbirth, for which there can be many causes. Sometimes it happens because of worries affecting a woman, and sometimes because of the narrowness of the passage of the uterus. Sometimes it is caused by fatness of the woman, and sometimes when the foetus is dead and does not move, and therefore does not help in the delivery. Sometimes it happens because the woman is [too] young when she gets pregnant, and sometimes because of the winter season. For then the air gets cold, so that the passageways of the body contract and childbirth is not easy for a woman. Sometimes it happens because of the summer season. For then the air becomes hot and therefore dissolves the power which she uses in order to push the foetus from the uterus.

When a difficult childbirth befalls a woman, we should order her to take a bath in water in which fenugreek, seeds of marshmallow, linseed, and peeled barley have been boiled. Her thighs and abdomen should be anointed with moistening and dissolving oils, such as oil of sesame, and oil of jasmine. Her sides and waist should be given a massage and should softly be rubbed with oil. One should administer her the beverage of oxymel, or take Venus hair, pulverise this into a fine substance and administer it her with wine. Or take mint, pulverise it and administer it her with wine, or take Roman absinth, pulverise it and administer it her with inspissated wine. One should make her
sneeze with soapwort and let her walk. One should push her gently into a slightly lower position, for this makes the birth easier. Another means to make it easier is to take a dry stone and to hang it on the thigh of the woman, or to take the root of the drug called cyclamen and to hang it on the thigh of the woman.

Chapter seventeen: On the things which expel the foetus and corrupt the sperm in the uterus

When I was reading the works of the ancient [physicians] who speak about the forces and helpful and harmful effects of the simple drugs, I found that they mention drugs which corrupt the sperm in the uterus and prevent conception, and drugs which kill the foetus and expel it from the womb. I therefore decided to mention the case of these drugs in this chapter, so that they will be known and so that women would beware of using them, since they corrupt the foetuses, as we said.

One of these drugs is tar, one property of which is that it corrupts the sperm when it is rubbed on the top of the penis during sexual intercourse. Dioscurides said that it is one of the most effective drugs for the prevention of conception, such that someone who uses it will be barren forever. If a woman uses it as a suppository, it kills the living foetuses and expels the dead ones. ${ }^{47}$

[^91]Savin kills the foetus in the belly and expels the dead one. ${ }^{48}$ When a pregnant woman uses cyclamen as a suppository, she will throw out what is in her belly. ${ }^{49}$ When one takes bitter lupine, mixes it with myrrh and honey, and a woman uses it as a suppository, it will make her menstrual blood flow abundantly and will bring the foetus down. ${ }^{50}$ The flour of lupine, when prepared as a poultice expels the foetus. When something of the root of the gentian is used as a pessary it expels the foetus. ${ }^{51}$

Dioscurides maintained that when one takes one mithqal of the long species of birthwort with pepper and myrrh, it will clean a woman in childbed from the superfluities retained in her uterus; it will make the menstrual blood flow copiously and expel the foetus. If a woman uses it as a pessary, it will have a similar effect. ${ }^{52}$

When one takes Chinese cinnamon orally or uses it as a suppository with red myrrh, it causes a miscarriage. ${ }^{53}$ When pregnant women are fumigated with cardamom, it kills their foetuses. ${ }^{54}$ When the place under the navel is plastered with juice of cyclamen, it causes a miscarriage; when it is mixed with honey and used as a suppository, it will have a similar effect. ${ }^{55}$ Juice of squirting cucumber also corrupts the foetus when it is used as a suppository ${ }^{56}$ Castoreum with water-mint or pennyroyal has the

[^92]same effect. ${ }^{57}$ When one rubs the great centaury, makes a pessary of it and applies it to the uterus, it makes the menstrual blood flow copiously and expels the foetus; its juice has a similar effect. ${ }^{58}$ The small centaury, applied as a pessary as well, makes the menstrual blood flow abundantly and expels the foetus. ${ }^{59}$

When one takes the seed of leek and garden cress, two dirhams of each, and pulverises and kneads this with tar, and a woman keeps it in her vagina as a clean suppository which has been steeped in the juice of water-mint, it prevents pregnancy and corrupts the sperm. When one takes scammony and pulp of colocynth, pulverises and kneads it with tar, and a woman holds it [in her vagina] when she is free from menstruation, it prevents pregnancy and expels the living or dead foetus. ${ }^{60}$ The blossom of cabbage when pounded and applied as a suppository, prevents the sperm from coagulation. ${ }^{61}$ When a woman uses mint as a suppository before having sexual intercourse, it prevents conception; when one smears the juice of mint on one's penis it has exactly the same effect. ${ }^{62}$

When pounded leaves of mint are used as a suppository, it kills the foetus and makes the menstrual blood flow copiously. ${ }^{63}$

[^93]When a decoction of thyme with honey is applied, it makes the menstrual blood flow abundantly and expels the placenta and foetus. ${ }^{64}$ When a pessary is prepared from Florentine iris and honey and applied by a woman, it attracts the foetus and expels it. ${ }^{65}$ When one uses as a suppository red myrrh with absinth or extract of lupine or extract of juice of rue, it makes the menstrual blood flow copiously and expels the foetus quickly. When one takes of the rind of the root of the laurel nine qirāts, ${ }^{66}$ it kills the foetus. ${ }^{67}$ When a woman uses pepper as a suppository after having sexual intercourse, it prevents conception. ${ }^{68}$ When a woman uses galbanum as a suppository and for a fumigation, it makes the menstrual blood stream copiously and brings the foetus down. ${ }^{69}$ When the root of madder is used as a suppository, it makes the menstrual blood flow copiously and brings the foetus down. ${ }^{70}$ When one puts some alum in the orifice of the uterus before having sexual intercourse, it prevents conception and may expel the foetus. ${ }^{71}$ When a woman is fumigated with sulphur, it expels the foetus. ${ }^{72}$

These drugs which corrupt the sperm and expel the foetus, are [also] applied to expel the dead foetus, which they do very quickly, God Almighty willing.

[^94]Chapter eighteen: On the extraction of the placenta from the uterus

When a woman has given birth, but the placenta is retained after the parturition, we should hasten to give her a treatment which extracts it. Let her, for instance, sneeze by means of soapwort while keeping her mouth and nostrils closed. Or take ashes, macerate them in water, and strain some of this water. Sprinkle some marshmellow on it, let her drink some of that water, and have her throw it up. If she licks saffron, and if one prepares a little ball of it and hangs it on her or on a beast of burden after the parturition, it will drive the placenta out.

Another means which extracts the placenta when it is retained: Take the meal of barley, knead it with juice of cabbage and let her use it as a pessary. Or boil mugwort, pour its juice over the womb and use it as a fumigant.

If neither the blood nor the placenta come out after the parturition, fumigate beneath her with the eye of a salt-water fish or with the hoof of a horse ${ }^{73}$ or with the excrements of a cat or with harmel or with mustard. For these ingredients make the blood and the placenta come forth.

If the blood is retained in a woman after the parturition, give her the drugs concerning which we stated above that they make the menstrual blood flow copiously. ${ }^{74}$ Or give her half a dirham of the rinds of cinnamon with juice of fresh mint, or give her two

[^95]dāniqs of castoreum with juice of water-mint, for this brings the blood down, God Almighty willing.

## Chapter nineteen: On sciatica

This disease called "sciatica" arises from humours flowing in the thick diaphragmatic nerve which is called "an-nasa'" and which is between the muscles of the thigh. Most of the time it originates from mucous viscous humour when it settles in the socket of the hip. Sometimes it is caused by the flow of sanguinous humour which is mixed with yellow bile and which also settles and becomes congested in the socket of the hip. Pain in the hip results from this. Sometimes the pain extends to the calf and heel and descends to the little toe of the foot. Sometimes the pain occurs in the sides.

If this disease occurs in the left hip, it is worse for the patient than when it occurs in the right side.

If this disease originates from mucous humour, it is followed by pain and heaviness in the hip, but no throbbing pain. This mostly occurs to middle-aged and old people. But if it originates from sanguinous humour mixed with yellow bile, it is followed by severe pain, a constant heavy throbbing, a burning sensation and inflammation. This occurs mostly in young men.

When it has become clear to us that the disease is caused by a hot humour, we prescribe the bleeding of the saphenous vein of the leg, and when the disease occurs in both sides the vein of both sides should be bled. Galen said that in the case of this
disease which is called "sciatica", it is possible to bleed such an amount as cures [the patient] in one day. ${ }^{75}$ Sometimes, in [the case of] this disease, we bleed from the so-called median cubital vein on the affected side, especially in the beginning. We do so if the season [of the year], the age, habit and strength [of the patient] are conducive [for his cure]. Hereafter the patient should take drugs which purge the yellow bile, and one should administer enemas with mild ingredients to him. He should take food which extinguishes the heat and sharpness and bath continuously in fresh water. Let him take a pill of mastic and aloe and be anointed with cold oils of an appropriate temperament, God willing.

If this disease arises from viscous humour or from cold superfluities, we give the patient drugs which purge that cold humour with softness and fineness, such as the colchicum pill, the pepperwort pill, or the "stinking pill" 76 or the stomaticum pill 77 or the "well-fabricated pill" or the "Theodoretus" 78 and similar drugs which purge the cold, coarse humours. Moreover, one should administer to him enemas prepared from centaury, linseed, fenugreek, pulp of colocynth and the like. He should eat

[^96]food which produces good humour and abstain from stuffing himself with food and drink. He should avoid solid food and drink which is slow to digest. He should not have sexual intercourse, especially not when satiated.

When we apply purgatives and evacuate [the bowels of] the patient by means of enemas and by bathing, we should at the same time use plasters and oils externally. Qusṭa ibn Laqaa said in his treatise on stupor that every liniment, sticking plaster or poultice, when applied to a limb of the body, serves the purpose of warming it and dissolving its coarse matter. ${ }^{79}$ However, we may be obliged to begin by completely evacuating the body by means of purging and bleeding; for when the rest of the body has been thoroughly cleaned and purified, we know that the disease is only in the limb [mentioned above], originating from matter which has managed to penetrate it, while there is nothing to strengthen it from the rest of the body. Then we should apply those sticky plasters, poultices and oils. But when the body is full, we should be very careful and on our guard, because in that case these means more attract towards the sick limb than dissolve from it.

Galen said that when this disease reaches its climax one should cut the vein itself and then cauterise. ${ }^{80}$ Dioscurides maintained that he used to cauterise the sciatic nerve with goat's

[^97]dung and alleviate the pain, as I will describe. An example of cauterisation: Take a piece of wool, dip it in oil, let it be impregnated well and put it on the nerve in the ball of the thumb between the thumb and the ulna. Then take dry dung, burn it in the fire, put it on the wool and leave it until the fire has gone out. Repeat this with other dung instead of it and continue until the feeling of pain has reached the hip, for then it will pass, God willing. ${ }^{81}$ Dioscurides also maintained that if one takes dung of a cow, wraps it in a leaf, puts it on hot ashes, takes the leaf away from it and puts it, while still hot, on the sciatic nerve, it will be of manifest benefit. ${ }^{82}$

One should administer to the patient warm dissolving drugs, as the theriac, ${ }^{83}$ colophony, sajjiznaiya, the pill of bdellium, the electuary of peppers and the like. One should foment the place of the disease with hot water in which mint, aneth, camomile, origan, melilot, marjoram, laurel leaves and similar dissolving drugs have been boiled. Or boil harmel with its root and mustard, apply it as a compress in old pieces of cloth, for it has a warming effect. Or take meal of lupine, boil it with vinegar mixed with water if the disease is hot, and with water and honey, if it is cold and coarse. Smear this on the place [of the disease], for this poultice is very strong. Of similar strength are caper root rinds when applied in a poultice alone and with other ingredients. Or

[^98]take the root of lily, pulverise and pound it into a fine substance with vinegar and smear it on the place, for this is one of the remedies which relieves arthritis. Good for this disease are hot dissolving oils, such as oil of camomile, oil of aneth, oil of laurel, oil of costus, oil of jasmine, oil of harmel and the like.

One should use those compound drugs whose benefits we have learned from experience and which were tested by eminent physicians before us. One of these is the perfect "well fabricated pill", which is good for diseases of the joints originating from coarse superfluities, and which is also good, God willing, for sciatica and gout and wind in the nerves - a wonderful remedy. Its composition is: Take gum-ammoniacum, sagapenum, blue bdellium, opopanax, red socotric aloe, sarcocol, asafetida, seed of harmel, seed of celery, asafetida and anise, one dirham of each; two dirhams of the pulp of colocynth; three dirhams of turbith with a white, hollow stem; scammony and sweet reed, half a mithq $\bar{a} l$ of each. Pulverise and sieve these ingredients; dissolve the resins with extract of leek and knead them with the other drugs; prepare pills of it the size of coriander [seed]. One should take a dose varying from one mithqāl to two mithqāls for a strong person with a rigorous regimen. This pill, since it is the "well fabricated pill" is as wonderful as the "stinking pill" and the sagapenum pill. It is beneficial for many things, God Almighty willing.

Prescription for the sagapenum pill which is, God willing, good for arthritis, sciatica, wind in the nerves and every disease originating from cold and coarse superfluities; it should be taken continuously and has been tested by us: Take sagapenum and
turbith with a white, hollow stem, five dirhams of each; blue bdellium, seed of celery and sweet reed, two dirhams of each; dried thyme, mint, seed of harmel, one dirham of each; scammony, castoreum, pepperwort, half a dirham of each. Pulverise, sieve and knead these ingredients with extract of fresh celery; prepare little pills of it and dry these in the shade. One should take one mithq $\bar{a} l$ of it with lukewarm water or with water in which mastic, anise and lavender have been boiled. One may take two mithqāls of it with a strict regimen, God Almighty willing.

Prescription for a pill composed by Ishāaq ibn 'Amrān for coarse phlegm and arthritis and a wind in the body caused by cold: Take five dirhams of Meccan senna; three dirhams of blue bdellium; sagapenum, sarcocol and gum-ammoniacum, two dirhams of each; mastic, sweet reed, pulp of colocynth and scammony, one mithqaal of each; mint, seed of celery, anise, seed of horse-fennel, seed of harmel, Indian nard, lavender and naphtha salt, half a dirham of each. Pulverise, sieve and knead these ingredients with extract of celery; prepare little pills of it and dry them in the shade. One should take one mithqāl of it with extract of chickpeas after a strict regimen, God Almighty willing.

Prescription for a pill which is good for pain of the back and arthritis which is caused by phlegm and a coarse wind. One should take one mithqāl of it with hot water, and after it one should eat chickens with extract of chickpeas and drink fragrant wine: Take six mithqāls of hiera fīqrā; two mithqāls of Indian salt; two and a half mithqāls of anise; rind of myrtle, orchid, seed of cocculus indicus plant, madder, Indian pepperwort, one
mithqāl of each; five mithqāls of agaric; four mithqāls of the pulp of colocynth; ten mithqāls of turbith; two mithqāls of the seed of celery. Pulverise, sieve and mix these ingredients with the hiera. Then take two mithqa $l$ ls of blue bdellium and one and a half mithqāl of sagapenum, stir them with extract of rue, knead the other ingredients with it and make of it pills the size of peppercorns. One should take two dirhams of it with lukewarm water in the early morning, God willing.

Prescription for the oil of colocynth composed by Ibn Masawayh which, when rubbed on the soles of the feet, removes the coarse phlegm in a wonderful way: Take fifty mithqāls of colocynth; thirty mithqāls of spurge and twenty mithqāls of the milk of Euphorbia pityusa. Pound the colocynth well, pour three ratls of water over it and leave it for three days. On the fourth day put it over the fire, pour one ratl of aged oil over it, cook it on a low fire until two-thirds of the water is gone and one-third is left. Then strain gently and throw the lees away. Put the oil back in the pot. Put three ounces of wax on it and when the wax has dissolved in it, add the spurge and the milk of Euphorbia pityusa, which have been pounded and strained. When this has been well mixed take it off the fire and store it in a large glazen clay-pot. In case you wish to use it as a treatment for coarse phlegm and winds locked in the back, give the patient one mithqāl of sagapenum before bedtime. Next morning, give him another mithqāl with lukewarm water and rub the soles of his feet and between the thighs, for it will remove the coarse phlegm in a
wonderful way; it even purges without taking the sagapenum, God Almighty willing. ${ }^{84}$

Prescription for a suppository which I have composed for the removal of the coarse viscous phlegm, for pain in the back and for a colic caused by cold: Take two dirhams of sagapenum; blue bdellium, sarcocol, pulp of colocynth, scammony, natron, lycium, gall of a cow, red myrrh, one dirham of each. Pulverise the ingredients, melt the resins with an amount of inspissated honey similar to that of all the ingredients, mix them well, and rub the hands with oil of sesame. Then make suppositories of it similar to acorns in size and put one in as far as possible. When you put one in and it comes out, you should bring others in, with a maximum of three for a strong patient, God willing, Who is exalted.

Prescription for the oil of storax which is good for arthritis, warms the cold members [of the body], the bladder and the kidneys, and dissolves hard tumours: Take one qist ${ }^{85}$ of oil of vinegar and three ounces of dry storax, heat this over a gentle fire until the oil takes over the faculty of the storax, take it down from the fire, strain it and apply it, God Almighty willing. ${ }^{86}$

Oils in general make vapours and winds collected in the organs come forth, dissolve the humours and cook them, and warm the cold members [of the body]. The strongest oil to effect

[^99]this is oil of squirting cucumber, then oil of costus, oil of laurel, oil of harmel, oil of the castor oil plant, oil of rue, oil of aneth, oil of narcissus, oil of balm of Gilead, oil of gillyflower and similar dissolving oils. If someone needs to strengthen their power to dissolve the humours and to expel the winds from the joints, he should boil in any of these oils the pill of pyrethrum or castoreum or marsh-nut ${ }^{87}$ or spurge or harmel or storax or costus or mint and similar hot dissolving resins and seeds. They should be boiled alone or together; in every ounce of these oils one should boil a dose varying from one dirham to one mithqāl. One should in general use them as little as possible and be careful, except when the body has been evacuated, lest they attract matter to the members from the rest of the body. For that would mean an increase and strengthening of the disease. If the disease is caused by cold which has affected the member, or is caused by a wind which got locked in it, but not by [putrefying] matter, the application of these oils is good at any time and in any circumstance.

Prescription for a poultice composed by Ishāq for pain of the knees and thighs, which has been tested: Take ten dirhams of wax; one ounce of mastic from the turpentine-tree; very acid vinegar and sweet oil, half a raṭl of each; gum-ammoniacum and fat of calves, two ounces of each. Melt all these ingredients over a fire, mix with it ten dirhams of bitter costus and two dirhams of false bdellium. Do this during the night, but wash it with hot water during the day, God Almighty willing.

[^100]
## Chapter twenty: On gout

This disease which is called "gout" is a heavy hurting pain especially occurring to the feet. It is accompanied by tension of the nerves and throbbing pain. It only originates from bad humour streaming to the feet. If that humour is hot, it causes a constant heavy throbbing, burning pain and inflammation in the feet. If that humour is cold and coarse, it causes a profound heaviness, tension and swelling of the feet without a throbbing pain. The tumours accompanying gout and arthritis do not suppurate, for suppuration only occurs in members which are fleshy and contain much blood. The joints are fed by cold viscous moisture and are, besides, free from flesh. It is therefore impossible that pus would occur in them. This disease occurs mostly when someone leads a restful, luxurious life, without physical exercises but with much eating and drinking. For many superfluities originate from these things in the body, and when the feet are weak those superfluities stream to them; for a weak member, since it is almost powerless, cannot dispel the superfluity which increases by itself.

Because of what we said, gout mostly occurs among kings and among those who lead a restful life and have moist bodies, and more in particular that person amongst them who has much sexual intercourse, especially when he is satiated. For the joints become hot during sexual intercourse, and then the superfluities are attracted to them by the heat. Excessive sexual intercourse is also harmful for the nerves and corrupts them, and the feet are members full with nerves. For this reason eunuchs do not have
gout, since they do not have sexual intercourse. But if it occurs to anyone of them, then it is because of the many superfluities accumulating in their bodies, caused by too much mixture (of food) and too little regimen and by giving in to their desires for different kinds of food, just like boys. For gout does not occur at all among boys, since they do not have sexual intercourse; but if it happens to them, it is because of too much mixture [of food]. Even so in the case of women, gout does not happen to them at all, because they do not become very tired by sexual intercourse as men do; and also because they expel the superfluities from their bodies every month through menstruation. What I said about those suffering from gout equally holds good for those suffering from arthritis.

Galen said that if gout starts in April or in mid summer, it can heal within forty days or slightly less, but if it occurs in the period between autumn and the beginning of winter it is difficult to heal. ${ }^{88}$

In beginning our treatment of someone suffering from gout, it may be necessary first of all to evacuate his body by means of bleeding, if much blood has collected in it. When the disease is caused by hot blood or fullness, we should bleed him from the inner side of the foot, so that the matter which will unevitably

[^101]stream to the limb is expelled. If the superfluity is mucous, we evacuate it with drugs which evacuate the bad humours, such as the pepperwort pill or colchicum pill or the "well-fabricated" pill or the stomaticum pill or the sagapenum pill, and the like. When we know that the corrupt superfluous matter has disappeared or reduced, we treat the feet at that time with poultices, oils, and fomentations; we give the patient the same treatment as at the onset of the disease, [namely], drugs which repel and stop the superfluity from streaming towards the feet. If the disease is caused by heat, we treat it with seed of fleawort, oil of roses, extract of black nightshade, extract of purslane, meal of barley, duck-weed, rind of gourd, fresh coriander, leaves of lettuce, oil of roses with egg white and the different kinds of sandalwood, leaves of roses, and camphor kneaded with mucilage of the seed of fleawort or with extract of endive and the like. If the disease is caused by cold, we treat it with extract of cabbage, leaves of henna, harmel, origan, and the poultices which we will mention afterwards. One should administer hot drugs, such as the theriac, sajjiznaiyä, the electuary of cumin and of peppers, colchicum and the like. [Patients] should eat food which digests quickly and produces a good humour; they should take moderate physical exercise and of the following compound drugs, they should use those which, according to the opinion of the physician, are appropriate in all seasons, God Almighty willing.

Prescription for the colchicum pill which is good, God willing, for arthritis and for gout caused by cold: Take red aloe, colchicum, yellow myrobalan, pulp of colocynth, white turbith, blue bdellium, gum-ammoniacum, and sagapenum, two mithqāls
of each; sarcocol, castoreum, spurge, opopanax, seed of harmel, and seed of celery, one mithqal of each; one dirham of saffron. Pound, sieve and knead these ingredients with extract of fennel; prepare little pills of them and dry them in the shade. Let the patient take one mithqā$l$ of it with hot water or one and a half mithqāl with a strict regimen, God Almighty willing.

Prescription for a pill made from only a few components, good for gout and tested: Take one dirham of colchicum; two mithqāls of yellow myrobalan; one mithqāl of white turbith, and four mithqāls of red aloe. Pound these ingredients, sieve and knead them with extract of leek, prepare pills of it and let the patient take a dose varying from one mithqāl to two dirhams with lukewarm water, God Almighty willing.

Prescription for a pill for gout which alleviates the pain and is derived from the work of Sábur: Take anise, black caraway, white pepper, long pepper, pith of safflower seed, and cinnamon, one dirham of each; ginger and spurge, four dirhams of each; six dirhams of mastic, and twenty dirhams of colchicum. Collect these ingredients when they are pulverised and sieved, knead [the mixture] with wine, prepare pills, dry them in the shade, store them in a vessel, and let the patient take one dirham with extract of cumin, God willing. ${ }^{89}$

Prescription for a pill which is good for gout and reliable, and can be taken in winter and summer: Take socotric aloe and sweetmeat ten dirhams of each; sagapenum, yellow myrobalan, belleric myrobalan, and colchicum, five dirhams of each; pepper

[^102]and long pepper, two and a half dirhams of each; asafetida and opopanax, one dirham of each; two dirhams of white garden cress, and one dirham of Indian pepperwort. Pound these ingredients, strain and knead them with extract of leek; prepare pills of it with oil of jasmine, and dry them in the shade. Let the patient take two dirhams with lukewarm water at all times without a regimen; it is a well-known good medicine, God willing.

Prescription for a pill good for gout which may be taken at all time and is attributed to the physicians: Take yellow myrobalan cleaned from its kernel, belleric myrobalan, emblic myrobalan, and ginger, four mithqāls of each; seven mithqāls of Persian origan; two mithqāls of Indian pepperwort; twenty one mithqāls of white colchicum; eleven mithqāls of sweetmeat and fifteen mithqāls of bdellium. Pound, sieve, and knead this with extract of black nightshade, prepare pills from it and dry them in the shade. When the patient feels pain, let him take from it on an empty or full stomach by day or by night before the pain gets heavy, without following a regimen. He should take two mithqāls with hot water or with wine, God willing.

Prescription for a pill made from only a few components, good for gout, tested and well-known: Take orchid, colchicum, hiera fiqrā, yellow myrobalan, and turbith, one part of each. Collect these ingredients when they are pulverised and sieved, knead them with extract of black nightshade and extract of bindweed, and prepare pills of this. Let the patient take two dirhams or two mithqäls with hot water, God willing.

Prescription for a pill composed by 'Isā, which is good, God willing, for arthritis, gout, and for winds locked in the intestines
and sides: Take pulp of colocynth, red aloe, sarcocol, sagapenum, blue bdellium, spurge, scammony, white turbith, mastic, leaves of dried thyme, and anise, two mithqāls of each. Pound, sieve and knead this with extract of cabbage; prepare little pills of it, dry them, and let the patient take a dose varying from two to two and a half dirhams with hot water; he should take it one day and then leave it for three days, God Almighty willing. 90

Prescription for a plaster for a tumour of gout in the feet, hands and knees: Take ten dirhams of meal of barley; five dirhams of red sandalwood; three dirhams of acacia; myrrh, saffron, and opium, one dirham of each; pound, sieve and knead a small amount of this with extract of black nightshade, smear it on the place of the tumour, and moisten whatever dries up with extract of black nightshade.

Prescription for a plaster for bloody tumours and for gout caused by heat: Take marshmallow, meal of barley, and seed of fleawort; mix it with extract of purslane; drip oil of roses with egg white on it until it binds together in a salve, and put it on the tumours of the feet and wherever [else] they are. For gout caused by heat: Boil quince with vinegar and meal of barley and put it on the place. Dioscurides maintained that if one mixes opium with milk and with some saffron and makes a liniment of this, it will alleviate the pain of the gout caused by hot bile. ${ }^{91}$

Prescription for a plaster good for gout caused by heat which I have tested: Take red and yellow sandalwood, the horned poppy collyrium, and meal of barley, two mithqāls of each; opium,

[^103]acacia, saffron, and meal of lentils, one dirham of each. Pound, sieve and knead this with extract of coriander, extract of black nightshade, oil of roses and egg white and put it on it, God Almighty willing.

Good for gout caused by cold is to plaster it with scordium, which is wild garlic with vinegar, or take pounded seedless raisins and pounded rue, mix them and smear it on the place. Or take fat of a vulture, mix it with some sheep's dung and put it on the place; when one pounds the fat of a he-goat and kneads it with the dung of a sheep and with some saffron and puts it on the gout, it will dissolve its pain, God willing. Or boil roots of squirting cucumber with vinegar and put it on the hurting place.

Hot plasters and hot oils should be applied in the same way as we have explained and mentioned in the chapter in which we discussed the treatment of sciatica, God Almighty willing. ${ }^{92}$

We have mentioned in this treatise, praise be to God, the diseases which occur in the procreative organs and the manner to treat them according to the rules of medicine and methods of our profession. We have concluded this treatise by mentioning in an abridged and concise way the diseases which occur in the lowest part of the body, namely, sciatica and gout, and their treatment. Success is granted by God, in Whom [we place] our reliance and trust.

## GLOSSARY OF MATERIA MEDICA

أبهل 5avin 569,572,592,608,1095
Oriental tamarisk أثل 682
plums 311 إجّاص
lemon-grass 563,595,609,778,878 إذخر rice 696 أرز

آس myrtle 276,680,685,700,922
asarabacca 145,1037 أسارون
lavender 572,1266,1274 أسطوخودوس
ceruse 228,261,323,332,341,389,402, إسفيداج (الرصاص)
415
أسقرديون وهو الثوم البرّي scordium Teucrium L. which is wild garlic 1485-6

vermicelli 696,921 إطرية

الإطريفل الكبير 453
أفسنتين absinth 564,572,625,777-8,1001,1129
أفسنتين رومي Roman absinth 594,605,1075 أفيون أقاقا , acacia 228,333,402,411,445,462,474,679,711,717,931 1467,1481
إكليل الملك melilot 387,642,856,874,1230 cadmia 331-2,405 إقليميا الفضــة emblic myrobalan: fruit of Phyllanthus emblica L. أملج 1441 ألج أنجدان 1249 asafetida أنجرة Roman nettle 106,118,145,157 آنيسون , 106,130,156,180,562,569,574,582,596,599,608 643,1266,1273,1282,1424,1461 إوز
إيارج فيقرا 560,604,776-7,1281,1451
Florentine iris إيرسا 1127

$$
\text { إيّل ـ } \operatorname{~قرن،~مـنّ~}
$$


basil 726 باذروج
ceruse 410 باروق
باقلّى beans 88,94,366-7,385,392,1014

بان cyclamen 634,1079,1107 بخور مريم برذون

Venus hair برشاوشان 1073 برنجاسف 1152 برتLا 110 برن seed of fleawort 840,1397,1400,1472 بزر تطونا linseed 106,128,156,852,874,884,939-940,1069-1070, بزر كتّان 1197
mace بسباسـة 132 با coral 679,730 بسد onion 159 بصل البصل الأبيض 121 white onion البصل الشامي 117 Syrian onion Star-of-Bethlehem 118-19 بصل الفار بُطْم $\leftarrow$ watermelon 258,310,888 بطّيخ the dung of a sheep بعر الغنم 9-9 1488 goat's dung 1109 بعر المعز dry dung بعرة جافّة 1217


# البقلة اليمانية 198,257,921 

marsh-nut 1328 بلاذر
بلَّح 1323,726 بلا acorn 263,718,1312 بلّوط
belleric myrobalan: Terminalia belerica Roxb. 1432,1441 بليلج henbane 227,261,275,309,786 بَنْج pills 790 بنادق
بنفسـج violets 375,915 $\leftarrow$ دهن white behen البهمن الأبيض 105 red behen البهمن الأحمر 105 borax بورق 346 orchid 1282,1451 بوزيدان egg white 343,471,843,857,911-12,916,936-7, بياض اليض 1399, 1473,1483
بيض ↔ صفرة، مـخّ

تربد turbith 1285,1452
white turbith 1411-12,1419-1420,1460 تربد أبيض تربد أبيض قصبي , turbith with a white, hollow stem 596,605-6 1250,1260
lupine 386,1097,1002,1030,1124 ترمس manna from Khurāsān 833 ترنجبين خرسانى
 red and white hedge-mustard 116-7 توذري أحمر وأبيض تين figs 98,885 الثوم البرّي Theodoretus 1195 ثيادريطوس

جاوشير opopanax 606,618,1413,1434 جرجير rocket $108,118,123,130,158,169,181$ carrot $109,118,123,130,159,168,194$ جزر جزر بري 180,574 wild carrot cat-thyme 573 جعدة جلاب 191 rosewater-syrup flower of the pomegranate $271,278,333,391,474,680$, جلنار 716,730,923
castoreum 558,607,616,764,766,787,1028,1038, جندبادستر 1046, 1110,1160,1328,1413 gentian 576,623,1100 جنطيانا
electuary $112,125,136,139,154$ جوارش the electuary of spices 452 جوارش الأفاويه the electuary of peppers 1228,1404 جوارش الفلاغل جوارش الكمّن

جوز walnuts 148,168 جوز بوّا 132,1038 جون حاشا 1126 حا 1 حا the hoof of a horse 1154 حافر برذون حبّ الأصطماخيقون a pill made from only a few components 1418 ,


1450
حبّ الزلم 116 حبي the sagapenum pill 1255-7,1392 حبّ السكبينج الرّب colchicum pill 1193,1391,1409 حبّ السورنجان the well-fabricated pill 1194,1244,1255,1391 حبّ الصناعي الصونج the pill of pyrethrum حب عاقرقرحا 1327 حبا حبّ الكور 1228 حرقر حبر
 حرف garden cress 106,1115 حرف أبيض 1435 حر 102 حر حرمل harmel 1155,1231,1249,1262,1273,1328,1402,1414
دهن
 lycium 445,930,1309 $\qquad$

حلبة fenugreek 853,874,884,1069,1197 $\leftarrow$ ـ دقيق حلتيت منتن 1248,1434 حsafetida chickpeas $83,98,122,392,1014,1276,1280$ حمص حمام henna 765,1402 حنّاء حنطة wheat 388 ـ 1222 حنظل colocynth 1292 ث شحم، دهن حيّ العالم 227,840 sempervivum حير fortified bread 1011-12 الخبز المحكم الصنعـر الخيزیى البرّي 378 الخير dung of a cow أختاء اليقر 979 خرء الحمام
 خردل mustard 1155,1232 خرة

خروع
lettuce $227,230,257,264-5,271,308,310,313,1399{ }^{\text {² }}$
خششخاش 919 poppy
خصـى الثعلب 101 testicles of the fox خصر marshmallow 376,470,852,919,1069,1146,1472 خل" ,228,259,276,417,463,477,694,707,712,1007,1233-4
vinegar 1238,1475,1486,1491
very acid vinegar الخلّ الثقيف 1340 خلّ خمر wine vinegar 459,717-18,1006
young small birds 122 مخاليف العصافير galingale $92,105,127,145,159,165,186$ خولنجان cucumber 258 خيار خيار شنبر 832 Indian laburnum خيري

Chinese cinnamon $128,140,187,561,593,1038,1105$ دار صيني long pepper 92,114,128,144,187,1424-5,1433 الدار فلفل دلـاج
دحمرتا: المعجون المسمّى الدحمرتا 568 دخان السراج المطفأ 765 soot from extinguished lamp smoke of barley 766 دخان الشعير لُخْن 696 دلر دردار ↔ لسـان العصـافير
leopard's bare 1028,1039 درونج دقيق الحلبة 942 در در دقيق الحنطة 5eal of wheat 884-5 دقيق سلت 1-1150 meal of barley
meal of barley 365,371,841,846,884,1398,1466, دقيق الشعير 1472,1475-6,1480
دقيق العدس meal of lentils 841,1481 dragon's blood 475,718,925 دم الأخوين brains أدمغة 97

 oil of balm of Gilead 1324 دهن اليلسـان دهن البنفسـج دهن دهن الحرمل oil of harmel 1241,1323 the oil of colocynth دهن الحنظل 1290 دهن خروع دهن 589,1323 دهن خلّ 1317 دهر 13
 دهن الرازتي دهني oil of laurel 1240,1323 دهن الرند oil of jasmine 166,175,1241,1436 دهن الزنبق oil of rue 1324 دهن السذاب دهن سمسـم 629 ده oil of lily 621,623,625-6,638,770,876,879-880, دهن السوسن 896-7
oil of sesame 201,1071,1311-12 دهن الشيرج
oil of aneth 1240,1324 دهن الشبث oil of squirting cucumber دهن قتّاء الحمار 1322 دهن القسط 17323-1,1340 oil of almonds 587-8,597-8,878 دهن لوز دهن الميعة 1315 دهر oil of nard 173,566,771,876,897,1000-1 دهن الناردين oil of narcissus 172-3,1324 دهن النرجس oil of roses 228,243,261,325,335,343,363,368, دهن الورد, 371,379,385,403,405,409-410,420,463,476,638,724,841, 843,845,851,857,869,912,916,933,937,1006,1397,1399, 1473,1483
oils أدهـان oil2,1320

الأدهـان الباردة الحسنة المزا ج - cold oils with a proper temper
ament 1190
cold, moist oils الأدهان الباردة الرطبة 199 hot dissolving oils 1239-1240 الأدهـان الحارّة المحلّة the dissolving oils الأدهـان المحلّلة 1325 relaxing oils الأدهان المليّنة 1004 fragrant oils الأدهان العطرية 5-1014 دوقوا 584 دها 5

راتينج 420 resin
fennel 180,562,574,583,595,1415 رازيانج
horse-fennel 141,608,1036,1273 رازيانج عريض رازقي $\leftarrow$ دهن electuary of gallnut الرامك (العفص، عفسي) رامي Syrian rhubarb راوند شامي 576 رار purslane 230,257,261,269,271,308,310,680,695,912, رجلة 920-1,941,1398,1473
رصاص lead 442 ↔ صفيحة رصـاصة مجوّةة كتجويف الملعقة a piece of lead hollow as a رصاص spoon 439-440 رماد 1145 رماد 110 the ashes of the wood of a vine رماد حطب الكرم 403-4 رماد ashes of the branches of a vine 346-7 رماد تضبان الكرم pomegranate $684,697,699,923,1012$ الرمّان رند laurel 576,1231
مرهمم 412,847,886,1474 salve مرهما سلسا 898 smooth salve dissolving salves 880 المراهم المحلّلة myrtle 1282 ريـان

زاج 706 vitriol

 زراوند 576,926 زي 57rth-wort
the long species of birthwort الزراوند الطويل 1101 زرنباد 1028,1038 wild ginger زعرور 697 ز 69
saffron 106,131,141,186,328,333,343,365,445,475 زعفران 846,855,866,868, 895, 926, 931, 935, 1147,1414,1467,1477,1481,1490

زنبق $\leftarrow$ دهن
ginger 92,104,114,127,142,167,186,767,1036,1425, زنجبيل
1441
زوفا 627,867 hyssop
زيت 1219 زي
زيت الإنفاق 370 زاوت
الزيت العتيق aged oil 1295-1 الزيت العذب 1340 fresh oil

الساذـج الهندي 144 Indian spikenard hartwort ساساليوس 1048 rue 229,273,275,277,643,1130,1287,1487 سذاب orache 198,257,310 سرمق cypress 457-8,461,464,468,474 سرو quince 685,697,1012,1475 سفرجل powder 590,728,1026 سفوف سفوف البزور 452 the powder of seeds
scammony $606,1118,1251,1262,1272,1308,1460$ سقمونيا
skink السقنقور 100,102
sagapenum 451,607,879,1247,1260,1271,1286,1302, سكبينج 1305,1307,1412,1432,1459 سكّر طبرزد 1030,1039 سكّ 1030 oxymel 1073 سكتجبين

سلت $\leftarrow$ دقيق سلجم turnip 87,108,123,147,158 cinnamon 143,563,576,594,608,617,642,1159,1425 سليخة سمّاق sumac 259,695,718
سمسم sesame 115,147,156 $\leftarrow$ دهن سمك fish 198 ع عين، غرى Meccan senna السنا المكّي 1270 انلّ Indian nard 141,563,594,1273-4 سنبل (هندي) سنّو
سورنجان colchicum $1409,1419,1427,1433,1451$ ك $\leftarrow$ white colchicum سورنجان أبيض 1443

سوس 919 سوس
سوسن lily 643,1237
haematite 327 شاذنج

fat of geese 843,854,865-6,892,933,943 شحم الإوز fat of he-goats شحم التيوس 1489 pulp of colocynth 1118,1197,1250,1272,1284, شحم حنظل 1308,1411,1458
fat of chickens 843,854,866,892 شحم الدجا
شحم الحجول fat of the kidneys of a goat شحم كلى ماعز 394 fat of a vulture شحم النسر 1488 شراب wine 103,937,1428 شراب حلو sweet wine 789, 792 شراب رفيع 778 exquisite wine fragrant wine الشراب الريحاني 1011 fragrant wine 636 شراب طيّب الريح شراب عفص 264 astringent wine
شعير > barley 199,853,889,914,928,1070 دخان، دقيق secacul 93,128,146,159,167,187 شقاقل earthenware burned in an oven 369 شقف التنو المحرّق شكزنايا 453,1228,1404

شمـع wax 394,864,1298-9,1339 شمـع أبي

شمـع أصفر 893 yellow wax شهدانج hemp 263,268,272,312 nigella 635 شونيز horned poppy collyrium 324,332,377,1480 شياف مـاميثا 635 شيح 779 wormwood

$$
\text { شيرج } \leftarrow \text { دهن }
$$

شيطرج Indian pepperwort 1283,1435,1442 شيطرج هندي hemlock 786 شيكران

صبر aloe 444,1190
red aloe 1410,1420,1458 الصبر الأحمر الصبر الأحمر السقطري red socotric aloe 1247-8 الانر socotric aloe 604-5,1431 الصبر السقطري origan 1230,1402 صـتر صتر بري 181 صتر 142 mountain-origan 142 صعتر جبلي Persian origan الصعتر الفارسي 1442 egg yolk 420,630,944 صفرة اليض gum, resin 932,1252,1310,1329 صمـغ الصمـن العربي white sandalwood 375 صندل أبيض صندل أحمر صندل أصفر 1480 yellow sandalwood the different kinds of sandalwood الصندلين 1399 pine nut 98,119,149,327, 699 صنوبر صوف 765 wool
decoction 835 مطبوخ the decoction of roots 877-8 مطبوخ الأصسل the decoction of roots 564 طيـخ الأصـول

طباشير أبيض 730
طبرزد $\leftarrow$ سكر، عسل
duck-weed 227,1398 طحلب
Maltese mushroom 446,711 طراثيث
tamarisk 699 طرفاء
boiled down wine طلاء 416
Armenian earth 718-19,920 طين أرمني
الطين ألذى يقال له قيموليا ـ ثيموليا

الطين المختوم

عاقرقرحا pyrethrum 131,146,157,166 عجْلْ $\leftarrow$ شـحم، مـخْ معجن
عدس lentils 264,915,923 $\leftarrow$ دقيق cyclamen 1096 عرطنيثا honey 107,168,190,365,379,628,633,867,889,1097, عسل (1108,1126-7,1234
origan-extract 185 عسل صعتري 1
 liquid crystalline sugar عسل الطبرزد 120 عري inspissated honey عسل معقود 1311 عسل منزوع الرغوة skimmed honey 133,161,1040 عسل عnما الراعي 722 عصا 72 عصافير $\leftarrow$ مخاليف
عَفْص gallnut 418,699,709 inspissated grapes عقيد العنب 559 علك اليطم 1340-1339 mastic from the turpentine-tree زناب 835 زنjube عنـ $\leftarrow$
black nightshade 226,260,309,365,378-9,831,839, عنب الثعلب 845,857,910,1445,1453,1469,1483

sarcocol 458,475,1248,1271,1308,1413,1459 عنزروت عود 768 aloeswood عود هندي 152 Indian aloeswood boxthorn 363 عوسـج the eye of a salt-water fish عين سمكة مالحة 1154

laurel 936,1130 غار agaric 777,1284 غاريقون غرى السمك fish glutin 458, 462 sweetmeat 129,149,156,1431,1443 فانيد فجل 147 فجل فراريـج chickens 122,693 فرا 1280 chickens 1280 فراخ فراسيون horehound 572,585 spurge 1292,1299,1328,1413,1426,1459 فربيون the saffron-pessary الفرزجة الزعفرانية 862 pistachio فستق 148 mushroom 680, 699 فشّاّل lucerne 130. فصفصـة 158
lucerne 130, 158 فصفصة فقّاح الكرنب 1121 فقن 130 فلفل pepper 98,107,115,132,767,1102,1131,1288,1433 الفلفل الأبيض white pepper 787-8,1046,1424 الفلفل الأبيض والأسود 144 white and black pepper chaste-tree 231,234,277 الفنجكشت فوّة (الصبّاغين) madder 581,1134,1283 فـيّ mint 160,599,609613,618,622,635,643,776,779,1125, فوذنج 1159,1230,1262,1272,1329 فوذنج برّي pennyroyal 143,181,1110 garden-mint 553 فوذنج بستاني بري فوذنج جبلي 571,585 فونج فوذنج نهري water-mint $180,553,571,616,875,1110,1117$ قاقلّة 131,146 cardamom قاقلّة صغيرة smaller cardamom 187,1037 قا 131 قا cucumber $258,310,888$ قتّاء قتّاء الحمار squirting cucumber 633,1109,1491 cardamom قردمانا 1106 قرطاس papyrus 322,718 قرطم 1425 قر 18 قر gourd 198,200-1,257,310,324,913,921,1398 قَرُّعمُ
clove 131,145,164,187,1037 قرنفل قُسْط $\operatorname{costus}$ 105,141,188,768,788,1329,1343 $\leftarrow$ دهن caper root barks قشور أصل الكبّر 1236 قوّ odiferous reed 620,643 قصب الذريرة tar 765,1090,1116,1119 قطران

قطونا
colophony 1228,1405 قلونيا
centaury 623,1197 قنطويون the small centaury القنطويون الدقيق 1113 the great centaury القنطوريون الكبير 1111 قتّة galbanum 566,1047,1132 قيصوم 1008 southernwood Cimolian earth 364,400,1007 قيموليا كافور camphor 231,242,313,720,935,1400 كاكنج كبّر $\leftarrow$ قشور
كبريت 1136 sulphur yellow sulphur الكبريت الأصفر 6-415 كتّان
gum tragacanth 475,920,941 كثيرا

كرفس celery 562,574,583,593,599,609,611,776,1028,1035,1048

1249,1261,1264,1273,1275,1285,1414
كرم $\leftarrow$ كرق، رمـاد
كرنب cabbage 850,1151,1402,1462 ك ك فقّاح
كرويا 145 كريا كraway كزبرة coriander 230,309,695,845,1253,1398,1482 silk 575 كشوثا
common germander 573 كمادريوس كمثّرى 298,1013
كمّون كمّون كرماني black caraway $384,393,1424$ كمّونا 383 كرماني
frankincense 340,392,457,475,709,712,925 كندر the male species of frankincense 445,1029 الكندر الذكر كندس soapwort 767,1076,1144

bindweed 1453 لـن 1477 milk

> لبن التين 944 sap of figs لبن البقر 163,630 cow's milk
> fresh milk لبن حليب 164 curdled milk اللبن الرائب 197 لبن امرأة breast milk 868,932
 لبن امرأة وللت جارية milk of a woman who has given birth to a girl 912
milk of a donkey 887 ألبان الأتن milk of a goat 887 ألبان المعز goatsbeard 720 لحية التيس waybread 273,311,722,840,910,927-8 لسـان الحمل ash-tree 118 لسـان العصافير (بزر) لسـان العصافير وهو بزر الدردار (seed of) the ash-tree which is the seed of the dardār 169-170 frankincense 470 لوبان
beans 565 لويية
لوبية أحمر 584 red beans almonds 129,148,157 لوز لوز مامسثا
cocculus indicus plant 1283 مـاهيزهل




 مـّ العظام 87 مـنّ 87 marrow of bones sebesten 918 مخيطا myrrh 445,458,558,626,788,926,1046,1097,1102,1467 مر
 gall of a cow مرار البقر 1309 مر litharge 323,332 مرتك litharge 261,405,935 مرداسنج marjoram 642,779,874,1230 مرزنجوش مسك 768 مرر 76 dittany مشكطرامشير 582 mastic 188,457,474,585,867,1001,1037,1189,1266, مصطكى 1271,1426,1460


مُقْل bdellium 389,452,689,1444 blue bdellium 607,894,1247,1261,1270,1286,1308, مقل أزرق 1412.1459
false bdellium 446,1343 مقل اليهود
ملع نفطي 1274 naphtha salt ملح هندي Indian salt 1281 extract, liquid mixture, liquid substance ماء 916 ماء اللحر 342 sea-water ماء العسل quince ميبة 1016 inspissated wine 387 ميبختج ميعة storax 1046,1317,1329

$$
\text { ناردين nard 705,859 } \leftarrow \text { دهن }
$$ bishop's weed 130,563,574,585,1036 نانخواه نبق 697 نبق نيذ 1448 wine


unaged wine 123-4 نبيذ غير معتّق نرجس $\leftarrow ~ د ه ن ~$ نسر
natron 404,627,629,1308 نطرون mint 142,180,874,1074,1122-3 نعنـع thyme 599,610,613,874,1261,1460 نمام
black ants with two wings 174 نمل أسود له جناحان نيلوغر 202 nenuphar

هريسة الحنطة 86 هر yellow myrobalan 1411,1419,1432,1440,1451, الهليلج الأصفر الرا 1452
asparagus هليون 108,158 هندباء sweet reed 1039,1251,1261,1272 ورج ود عc cowrie 681,716,729 ودل roses 313,411,700,922,1400 $\leftarrow$ دهن preserved roses 833 ورد مربّي الورد الأحمر red roses 374-5,730-1,914 leaves of a vine 340 ورق الكرم

http://taylorandfrancis.com

## GLOSSARY OF TECHNICAL TERMS

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { مـأبض الرجل } \leftarrow \text { فصد } \\
& \text { أربية } \leftarrow \text { مـحاجم } \\
& \text { إنطـان } 678 \\
& \text { ألدرة 461,469,473,478 } \\
& \text { أصـل } \leftarrow \\
& \text { أغنس } 236 \\
& \text { أكال: الأكال الحادث في الأنثيين } 407
\end{aligned}
$$

> ألم 811 ألم فيما دون الشراسيف 805 ت 805 حس، أحس آلة 497,500,654
> آلات: آلات التتاسل 4,1497 مأمنز 1430 مأمون الغائلة، الغوائل $140 \leftarrow$ أدوية

> أنثى 12
> إناث 47

> تأنيث 47
> إناء 192 ↔ رفع
> آنية $\leftarrow$

باسليق بَرْر 317 البثر الذي يخرج في الذكر والمقعدة 6-345 تبخّر 1152 بخار 780 بخار الأدوية 649 بخار بارد 753 بخارات: البخارات والرياح المجتمعة في الأعضاء 1-1320 الارد 780
 استفراغ، فسد، فَصـن
أبدان: أبدان النساء باردة رطبة 485 الأبدان الرطبة 1364 ↔ راض، فضنل
بَرْد 63,65,602 برد السفل 114 برد الكلى 115 برد الكليتين والمثانة 138 برد نال العضو 1335 ـ غذاوؤه برودة 512 ↔ نقرس الإبردة: كثرة الإبردة في السفل 155 *بريابسموس 218

## بستوقة 1301

بواسير 517
مباضعة $\leftarrow$ شـهوة
بَطْن 1095 بطن الساق 1170 ـ 1 أدوية، أسفل، قتل
بقاء: بقاء جنس (الحيوان) 5,10,53

بلفم 155,603,673,1279 البلغم اللزج 1085 بلغمي

بلغماني 660
بندقة 135,1148
إبهام $\leftarrow ~ ع ص ـ ب ة ~$
بول 562 $\leftarrow$
أبوال: وتكون أبوالهنّ إلى السواد وإلى الحمرة 529
 يهيـج البـاه 125 ث شـهـوة، شــوق، ضـعف، مـــونة، قلّة،

قوام، قوّة، هش، اهتا
بيضة 479

تراب 526
توق: توق النفس وشـهوتها 290

$$
\text { ثْنی } \leftarrow ~ م ح ا ج م ~
$$

ثقْل 811, 871 ثقل كثرة الأخلاط 298 وثقل فى الوركين والمتن

812 ثقل شديد 1352 ث وجع ثَقْبُ: ثقب المجرى 289

جذب: جذب الجنين وأخرجه 1128 جُرْح 419,906 جرح من قبل العرق 8-417 4 ج جراح 902
مجرى 17 ↔ ثقب، ضيق
مجار 512 واتّسعت مجاري عروقهم 286 فتنضمّ مجاري البدن 1064
مجسّة 737,741
جِسْم: جسـم الرحم 501 جساء
 1415,1428,1437,1445,1462 مجفّف 1262,1460
جلاء: جلاء القلب من الهمّ 205 جمـ 150,182,394-5,577 جامـع 296,1370,1374

مجامعة 1365-6
جما ع (passim) 9 يهـيّج للجما ع 101 حرّكه للجماع 103 يحرّك
 الجماع 177 لأدوية التى تهيج الجماع 223 الإفراط فى

## الجماع 1367 ث ط

جنين (passim) 983 إتّصال الجنين بالرحم 1021-8,990,992,1021 دفع الجنـين من الرحم 1067 ث جذب، أحدر، تحرّك، أخرج إخراج، شقط، طرح، قتل، أفسد أجنّة 1089 ↔ قتل

جنبان
جانب: الجانب الأيمن 4-1173 جانبان 1171,1181 $\leftarrow$ فصد جنابة 305
جوف $\leftarrow$ أسفل
تجويف 18

حبّب 1253,1436,1454 تحبّب صنارا , 611,1264,1275,1415 1462
حبس: تحبس الدم 677,714 يحبس الدم 678 يحبس الطمث
825
احتبس 546 إذا احتبس طمثها 615 إذا احتبست عن المجامعة 747 وإذا احتبس الدم في المرأة بعد الولادة 1157 ¢

$$
\begin{gathered}
\text { محتبس } \leftarrow \text { مشيمة }
\end{gathered}
$$

احتباس 514 احتباس الطمث , 482,492,496,524,534-5,601 640,758 احتباس الصيض(ة) 757,799-800 احتباس المنى

## والحيض 762 واحتباس الطبيعة 805 ث فساد حبَل $\leftarrow$ أدوية، قطع، منع

حجاب: حجاب التنفّس 754 ولاتّصـال هذا الحجاب بالحلق ومواضـ الصوت 6-755 احتجم: يحتجم على الظهر 361
حجامة: حجامة الكعبين 540 بالحجامة في الكعب 542 محاجم: فيجعل المحاجم تحت كلّ ثدي 2-701-7 وتوضـع لها
المحاجم علي الأربية والمراقّ 3-772

حدّة 909 حدّة الوجع 353 لإفراط الحدّة في الدم 658 كالمرا حرارة، أغذية
أحدر: تحدر الطمث 622 أحدر الجنين 4-1098,1133 يحدر الدم 1160-1
حرَ 195,817
حرارة (passim) 48 إفراط الحرارة 71 حرارة معتدلة 220 حرارتهم غير مستحكمة 284 واستحكمت وقويت حرارة 639 الطار البدن 6-285 حرارة الأدوية 639 فإن كانت الحرارة في الورم مفرطة 844 الحرارة والحدّة من الورم 7-836 نقرس

$$
\text { حرق } 363
$$

حرْقة 808,1179,1351 حرّك: وحرّكتها حركة شديدة 980 9 جما ع، طبيعة

تحرّك: تتحرّك...حركة فيها بعض الشدّة من حركات البدن أو حركات النفس 9-988 وتحرّك الجنين عند ذلك حركة أقوى الحركات 6-1055-98ا حركة 506,508,1366 حركة عنيفة 7-426 والحركات الحنيفة 438 بحركة المادّة 5-514 والحركة المعتدلة 1010 ث 106

قوّة
حُزْن: الحزن الدائم 521 أحزان 1059
حس": حسِّ الألم 1223 ـ أحس": فإذا أحس" العليل بالألم 6-1445 أحشاء 179,447 حُصنر: حصر البول 801 حافظ
حُقّ": حقّ الورك 1167,1169
حقن: ويحقن بالحقن المسخنة 171-171 يحقن الرحم 888 ويحقن به الرحم $1111,913-4,916-7,928$ يحقن بالحقن الليّنة 1187

$$
\text { ويحقننن...بالحقن } 1196 \leftarrow \text { إحليل }
$$

احتقن 1169
حُقَن $\leftarrow$ حقن، استفرغ
حكّة 934,939 حكّة في القضيب 327 الحكّة المتولّدة في الرحم

حلّ: حلّ مادّة غليظة 1207 إحليل 4,55-30,33 ويحقن به الإحليل 300 ث عصب

تحليل: التحليل للرياح 443 تحليل الأخلاط 1326 تحلّب 1360 تحلّب الكيموسات 5-1164 تحلّب كيموس دم مختلط بمرّة صفراء 1168 تحلّب كيموس رلىئ إلى

القدمـين 1349
احتلم

احتلام 287-8,293,302,306,484 الاحتلام في النوم 282 يحتلم
|حتلاما كثيرا 304

$$
\text { حمل } 1063
$$

حَمْل 1002,1021 حامل 1005,1018,1024,1096 تحتمل الحامل...من الحركة 3-992

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { الحامل في أولّ حملها 6-995 } \\
& \text { حاملة } \\
& \text { حوامل 1009,1026,1034,1106 } \leftarrow \text { دبر }
\end{aligned}
$$

احتمل (passim) 620 احتمله في(ب) صوفة (passim) وتحتمل في القبل فرزجة 6-715 احتمل ... (في) فرزجة 723-4,1099-1100,1013-4,1151 وتحتمل منها في المنخرين

725-6 تحتمله المرأذ في قبلها 6-855 وتحتمل ني القبل
فى صوفة 8-857 وتحتمل نى القبل 898,933,938 وإذا

احتملته المرأة من أسفل 1093 وإذا احتملته المرأة في فرزحة 4-1103 واحتمل في الرحم 1112

احتمال 877
حمّام 556-7,879,1003,1204 حمال
حمّامـات 1189
حُمّى: حمّى حارّة 808
حميّات: حميّات لهبة 528
احتمى: ولا يحتمى عليه 1438 حمْية 1448 حمية وثيقة 1254 حمية واحتراس $1267,1277,1417$ قلّة الحمية 1372
حَيْن 540,1378 حيضـة 1120 ↔ احتباس، دم، طَهْر، نَزْف حيوان $12 \leftarrow$

حياة

خاصرة 1072
خَّ
خَّرَ 1205
أخرج 828,1139,1144,1291 أخرجنا لها من اللم 827 أخرج الجنين 1099-1100,1103,1112,1114,1130,1136,1138
وأخرج الميّتة 1094 ويخرج الميّت 1095 وأخرج الجنين الحىّ والميّت 1-1120 وأخرج المشيمة والأجنّة 1127 يخرج
المثيمة إذا احتبست 1150 ↔ جذب، أدوية
إخراج: إخراج الجنين الميّت 1139 إخراج المشيمة 1142
انخرق: كلّ مـا انخرق من عصبه 432
خَرْقة 189-190,368,463,956,959 خرقة الحجاب 393 ↔ ريط،
مرس، كمّد
انخراق: انخراق الحجاب 431
49
خصيان 1369
خصيتان 351,399,464
خلط 1477,1488
خلْط $\leftarrow$ أغذية

أخَلاط 611,1018,1321 الأخلاط الغليظة اللزجة 504 فإن كانت الأخلاط هـائجة في بدن الحامل 1018 ث ثقلّ، أدوية اختلاط: والاختلاط المتكيّن من المرّة السوداء2-531 مختلط $\leftarrow ~ ت ح ل ّ ب ~$ تخليط 1372,1375

خمّ خنصر: خنصر الرجل 1171 اختّاق الرحم 734,784 خَنْق 756

خناق 735,759

خام 1291,1301,1304 الخام الغليظ 1268 الخام الغليظ اللزج 1306

$$
\text { خيّل (الجماع) توهّما } 32
$$

تخيّل 295 تخيّل النفس 296 يتخيّل الإنسان في نومـه 8-297

دبر: دبّر طلاء2-371 ويدبّر منها مرهـ 412 تدبّر....الحوامل 999-1000 وتدبّر معدهنّ 1014

دبُبر 716,725
تدبير 204,552,701,975 تدبير ملطلّف 460 التدبير الموافق 738 دبيلة: دبيلة تنفجر 903
استدخل: تستدخل المرأة بعض هذه الأدوية في صوفة 4-703 ويستدخل منه في صوفات إلى داخل 8-847 ويستدخل باستقصاء 1312
دخّن: ويدخّن أسفلها بـأشياء طيّبة الرائحة 8-767 فدخّن تحت المرأة 4-1153 تدخّن 1133,1136
أدرّ: أدرّ الطمث
تدارك: فإن لم يتدارك الرحم 3-812
دَفْع: دفع الفضل 1361 ـ 1 ـنـين، مني دقّ دّ (passim) 120,132 ( دريع
لَم (passim) 512 دم حريّف 408 دم الحيض 505 دم حارّ 1389

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { > حبس، احتبس، حدّة، أحدر، تحلّب، أخرج، إسهال، } \\
& \text { أعضاء، انفجار، استفرغ، استفراغ، أِّا فسد، مشيمة، } \\
& \text { نزف، أنزل } \\
& \text { دماغ 39,44 } \\
& 199 \text { (passim) دهن } \\
& \text { ديمومة } \leftarrow \text { خريان } \\
& \text { داء دي 435,757,759,761,1164,1347,1357 } \\
& \text { أدواء 490,1496 }
\end{aligned}
$$

مسهلا 986 الدواء المسهل 1019 ويكون الدواء مسهلا
مأمونا 3-1022

أدوية (passim) 95 الأدوية المفردة 110-109-1 أدوية مركّبة 110,1242,1407 الأدوية الحارّة الأردية 181,1281 ألدوية قليلة الريح باردة 225 الأدوية الباردة 260 الأدوية المبرّدة 308 الألدوية المسهلة 362,1203 الأدوية اليابسة الاباردية 111 ألدوية تلين البطن وتحلّل رياحها 1-450 الأدوبة الأدية المنزلة للصفراء 672 الأدوية القابضة 692 الأدوية التي تجفّف المني وتدرّ الحيضة 781 الأدوية التي ترد ع وتقوّي العضو 9-938 الاني
 وتفتحه 883 الأدوية المأمونة الغائلة المقوّية للمعدة 7-1016

الأدوية المقابلة للأدواء 1044 أدوية تفسد النطفة فى

## الرحم وتمنع من الحبل 1086 أدوية تقتل الجنين وتخرجه

 من الرحم 7-1086 من أبلن الأدوية في منع الحبل 1092 الأدوية التي تسهل المرّة الصفراء 1187 الأدوية التي تسهل ذلك الكيموس البارد 3-1192 الأدوية المسهلة للكيموسـات الباردة الغليظة 6-1195 الأدوبة (الحارّة المحلّة 1227,1231 الأدوية المنزلة للأخلاط الردئة 1390 استعمال، قصد، قوى، هـا ج مداواة $\leftarrow$ طريق

ذَكَر 12,214 قام الذكر وغلظ 5-214 طال الذكر وغلظ 215 بَثُر، استدخل، طَرَفَ، عصب، الأوردة ذكْرْ : ذكر ودّ 208 زكور 46
تذكير 47 ط طرف
مذاكير 396,456
ذاب 335,896
مذاب 192
رؤية ث ث تهلّل وجع

رتيلاء
رِبط: ويربط ...رناطا مسترخيّا 189
ربو 755
رَجُل
رجْلّ $\leftarrow$ خنصر ، فَصند، ورم
رَحِم (passim) 621 مقدّم الرحم 800 فم الرحم 802 الرحم الناتئ 972 9 ج جسم، جنين، حرارة، حقن، حكّة، اختناق، استرخاء، رياح، صلابة، ضيق، عرقق، علل، انفجار، فم،

انقطاع، انقلاب، كمّ، مني، نتوء، نَزْفَ، ورم، أورام
أرحام 760,770,1027,1056 لاتّصال الأرحام بالحجاب 754 كا
قوّة، وجع
استرخاء 815,950 يعرض للرحم استرخاء 948 استرخاء المقعدة 973 ¢ رطوبة ردع
رسب 1167,1169
رصاص $\leftarrow$ صفيحة
رطوبة رطا
رطوبة شديدة 326 رطوبة مزلقة 429 الرطوبة الفاعلة للاسترخاء 7-466 إفراط الرطوبة 948 رطوبة لزجة باردة
1355-6

رطوبات 486 كثرة الرطوبات 71 رطويات كثيرة 486

رفع 1041,1300 وترفع في آنية ملساء داخلها 4-133 وترفع في إناء (أملس الداخل) 9-9 151,1428
مراق"↔ محاجم

$$
\text { رقبة: وجع رقبة الرحم } \leftarrow ~ ا ن ف ج ا ر ~
$$

رُكْبة ث وجع، ودم

رائحة: ورائحتها منتنة c06 روح: *الروح الحيوانية 38
ريح 33-4,40,77,137,214,220 ريح نافخة 41,74 ريح غليظة نافخة 219 ريح غليظة 374,1279 ريـع غليظة عسرة الانفراج 798 ريح عاصفة 980 ريح في المعدة 1024 للريح المتولّدة في الرحم 1033 الريح في الأعصاب (العصب)

$$
\text { 1246,1258 الريح في البدن } 1269 \text { ↔ دواء }
$$

رياح 88,1027 رياح كثيرة 240 ريا الأرحام 2-591 والرياح 864 الريا التي تعرض للرحم 864 الرياح الساكنة في المتن 1302 ث تحليل، بخارات، أدوية، أغذية، نَفْي
أرواح: الأرواح الباطنة 126 الأرواح الباردة السبب 155 الأرواح الصعبة 785
أرياح: الأرياح الساكنة في الأمعاء والجنبين 1457 راض: ويروضنون أبدانهم رياضـة معتدلة 1406

## رياضـة 1010 رياضـة شديدة 507 ترك الرياضـة 1358 ريش 63 ↔ شعر

ريق: على الريق 113,274 على الريق وعلى الشبع 1447
زند

زاد: زاد الحافظ حفظا 138 زادت في الحركة 5-204 زائد في


إسخان $\leftarrow$ قصد
سدّ": وتسدّ فاها ومنخريها 1145
سُّدَ 504,1035
سرّة 1107 ث 1035 وجع
سرود $\leftarrow$ إدامة
سعال: السعال الشديد 428
استفّ 170,229,1031
سفوف 452 سَفّة 598
سفاد 72 سفاد ذلك الطير 70

$$
\text { سُفْل } \leftarrow ~ ب ر د ، ~ ا ٕ ب ر د ة ~
$$

1291, أسفل 769 أسفل البطن 487 أسفل القدمـين (قدميه) 1304 وأسفل الجوف 1070 أسفل البدن 1499 ↔ دخّن

أسقط: أسقط الجنين 1105,1108 إسقاط 1034 إسقاط الحمل 904 إسقاط الجنين 6-22398,1025 998 سقُقْ 223,739,741,746 سقى 166 استسقاء 531,666 سكون
 سلَس سـم أسـهل
 سوء: سوء المزاج 499 ساق سيلان $\leftarrow$ مادّة

$$
\text { شبَعْ } \leftarrow \text { شريق المرأة } 1061
$$ شدّ 229,439,441,957 تشدّ أعضـاء المرأة شدّا شديدا 8-677 شِدّة 989,994 شدّة الضربان 353 ث 3 وجع شرب (passim) 103,168,197

شرْبْة (passim) 113,152,161

أشربة: الأشربة الحارّة 246,280 الأشربـة القابضـة 684 الأشربة المقبّضـة 7c32 7 ألغذية

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { شراسيف } \leftarrow \text { ألم، نَفْن } \\
& \text { شرْطْ } \leftarrow \text { مصّ }
\end{aligned}
$$

شَعْر 50,69 كثرة الشـعر والريش 70
اشتعال 907 اشتعال في القدمـين 1351 اشتقّ 236

شقاق 419
شكوى
شـمّ: وتشـّ مّ أشياء لها رائحة كريـهة 764 تشنّج 251,812
شهوة 39,58,248,547,1009 قوّت الشـهوة 204 إنّ للشـهوة ضروبا يهيجها 7-206 مغزر للشهوة 211 شـهوة للباه 217 الشـهوة للمباضـعة 235 شـهوة نفسـه 6-295 يخمّد شـهوة الجماع 1-267,270 شهوة الطعام 525 شهوتهنّ للطعام 736 شـهوة المطاعم الرديئة 1009 اتّباع شـهوتهم في المطاعم 3-1372 $\leftarrow$ توق، قليل

تشوّق إلى 292
شوق 8 الشوق إلى الباه 61 شيار شيّ
شيافة 716,724
مشيمة 1057,1156 ويقيت المشيمة محتبسـة بعد الولادة $\leftarrow$
1143 أخرج، إخراج، طرح، أنزل
صب": ويصبّ عليه دهن 175
أصحاب: أصحاب الدعة 1364 أصحاب النقرس 1379
أصحاب وجع المفاصـل 1380-1379
أصدّ عن
صدر 518
انصداع: لانصدا ع عرق من عروقها 519
صرع 252
صراع ع 429
صفيحة: صفيحة رصاص 229
صفراء 671 الصفراء الحادّة 408 ↔ 435 أدوية
صفاقات 435 الصفاقات المراقيّة 425
صافن $\leftarrow$ عرق، فصد
صفا: يصفّيّي (passim) 176,185
صلٌّب 239,260,527
صصلابة 466 صـلابة الرحم 943
صـلاية 364
صوفة 704,707,710,855,933,1116

خرب 1472
ضربان 355,905,909,1348 وضـربان دائم 9-1178 ديمومة الضربان 1-1350 $\leftarrow$ ش شدّة، انتقان، وجح

ضـعف: ضـعف عن الباه 96 خـُغْ 227,740 الضعف عن الباه 195 لضعف قوّته 1-1361 قلّة

انضمام 860
ضمّد 386-8,390, 838,842,875,1235,1236,1487 يضمّد بضماد 873
خنماد 844,884,1099,1206,1235,1338 ضمادات 1002,1212,1394,1402 ضيّق 503
ضيق: ضيق صدر 815 ضيق مجرى الرحم 1060
طبيب 533,1408
أطبّاء 449 الأطبّاء الأستاذون 75


طبَخ 123,184 (passim)
طَبْع: بالطبع (3,502-492
طبيعة 286 طبيعة المنى 92 فتحرّك الطبيعة للجماع 293 ك

احتباس، أعمال
طرح: طرحت الجنين 1137 تطرح المشيمة 1149 طَرَف: طرف الذكر 1091

طريق: وطريق مداواة تلك الأدواء 1497 طعام 81,94,665,1012,1280 $\leftarrow$ شـهوة، نضــج مطاعم $\leftarrow ~ ش ه و ة ~$ طَلْق 6-1055 الطلق الثديد 953 أطلق: ممّا يطلق أوجاع المفاصل 9-1058 طلى 225,243 (passim) طلى طلاء (passim) 331 طلاء سلسـا 336 ط دبر أطلية 362 أطلية تقلّص وتقبّض 454 طمث 591

طَمْث $483,485,490,521,537,546,668$ ↔ حبس، احتبس، احتباس، حدر، أدرّ، فساد، فيض، نَزْف، أنزلّ، إنزال نزل
طَهْر: الطهر من الحيضة 11190-1190 طهارة 237
أطاب: أطاب النفس 136
طار
طير $69 \leftarrow$ سفاد

> ظل $\leftarrow$ جفّف
> ظهر $\leftarrow$ نام، نوم، وجع إظهار: إظهار وجد 192

## عجن 120,133 (passim) <br> اعتدال 57,488,650

 عرض: بالعرض 493,497,502 أعراض 527عرق عِرْق: العرق المسمّى الصافن 7-536 ث مجرى، انصداع، فرغ، فصد، قطع
عرق النساء كوي
عروق 33,50,283,501,514 عروق المقعدة 6-515 عروق الرحم 654 عروق الأعغـاء $663 \leftarrow$ أفواه، انقطاع عسرْ: عسر الولادة 1043,1053,1058,1068
عَصَب 44,214,433,1368 عصب الإحليل المجوّف 34 عصب الذكر 241 العصب الغليظ الحجابي الذي يسمّى النساء 1165-6
عصبة: العصبة التي في أصل الإبهام التي بين الإبهام والزند 1220

## أعصـاب $\leftarrow$ ريح، انقباض عصـائب: عصـائب من خرق 440 عَضَل: عضل الفخذ 1166

 عضو (passim) 430 عضو ظاهر 319 عضو من أعضاء البدن 1206 العضو الضـعيف 1-1360 $\leftarrow$ ألدويـ، قدمانأعضاء 465,467,1321,1333 الأعضاء الرئيسـة 54 أعضاء المنـي 200 الأعضـاء الباردة 1316,1322 الأعضاء الألحميّة الكثيرة الدم 5-1354 عطّس 766,969,1076,1144

عطاس 970
عَطَش 810
عقّد 107 ↔ مني
انـعقد $\leftarrow$
عقارب $\leftarrow$
عقيم 1093
معاليق $\leftarrow$ وصل علّة $\leftarrow$ نطل، تولّد
عِلَ: علل الأرحام 2-601 علل الرحم 824 علل المفاصل
603,1244
عليل
أعمال: أعمال الطبيعة 752

معونة: المعوينة على الباه 194 عيد: أعيادهم العظام 5-234 عينان $\leftarrow$ وجع

غثيان: الغثيان الدائـم 525
غذاء
 309-310 الأغنية الفليظة المولّدة للرياح 5-454 أغذنـة
رديئة 526 الأغذية اللطيفة 880 الأغذية المليّنة الطبيعة الالِية
1004-5 الأغذية المطفئة للحرّ والحدّة 1188 الأغذيـة التي الاني
تولد الكيموس الجيّ 9-1198 الأغذية والأشرية الغليظة
اليطيئة الانهضام 1-1200 الأغذية السريعة الانهضام
الجيّدة الخلط 6-1405
غزن
غسل 401,1343 يغسل بـه الرحم 780-779 يغسـل الرحم وينقيّهـ 889-890

522 غَضَبِ
الغالب 673
غلظ $512 \leftarrow$ ↔ قام، ذكر غمز: غمز يد 208 غوائل $\leftarrow ~ م ـ ا ٔ م و ن ~$

فتوق 425 الفتوق والأدرة المتولّدة في الخصيتين 423 انفجار: انفجار الدم 667 انفجار الموادّ 890 انفجار الدم من رقبة الرحم 8-987 فَحْم 526
تفدية: تفدية لمن يهوى 209 فروج 637 فروج الرجال والنساء2-21 فرزجة 706,708,711,1111 فرزجات 1128 فرازج 621
افترش: ويفترش....الأدوية الباردة والفرش الباردة 262 فُرُش $\leftarrow$ نوم، افترش
إفراط $\leftarrow$ جماع، حدّة، حرارة، رطوبة، يبس

$$
\text { فرغ } \leftarrow \text { مني }
$$

$$
\text { إفراغ } \leftarrow ~ م ن ي ~
$$

استفرغ 542,1390 ويستفرغ تلك الفضـل الحارةّ 361 واستفرغنا من الدم 3-542 استفرغ منها من الدم 548 واستفرغنا العليل بالحقن 1203-1286 بأن يستفرغ بدنـه أوّلا ـالفصد 1386

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { فتح } \leftarrow \text { دواء } \\
& \text { نَتْقَ 434,437,439,447,456,465 } \\
& \text { انفجر: انفجر الودم } 886
\end{aligned}
$$

استفراغ: استفراغ مفرط 7 986 استفراغ الدم 1183 استفراغ جملة البدن بالإسهال والفصد 1208 استفراغ البدن

1333
فزَّع 523
فشر 1320
أفسد 1368 يفسد (تفسد) النطفة 1090,1118,1138 تفسد
الجنين 1109 ـ أدوية
فساد 663 فساد الطمث واحتباسـه 523 وفساد منيّها 747
فشاقي 441
فصد 819, 986 يفصد العروق 360 فصدنا الصـافن 541 فسد دم جميع البدن 2-661 أمرنا أن يغصد المرأة في
الباسليق أو الأكحل 9-818 فصد العرق من الجانبين
1182 فصدنا ...العرق المسمّى الأكحل 5-1184 الم الم
فَصدْ 736-531 فصد المرأة في أعالي البدن 669 فصد العرق من الرجل 822 فصد العرق من منابض اليد 4-823 فصد

الصافن من الرجل 1181 ويكون الفصد من مـأبض الرجل 1387 ↔ استفرغ، استفراغ
مفاصل 1355,1366 أوجاع، أورام
فَضْل 769 الفضل الغليظ 592 فضل صفراوي 796 فضل غليظ سوداوى 8-797 فضل حارّ صفراوى أو دموى 8-807 أهـ

فضل غليظ 810 فإن كان الفضل بلغميا 1390-1389

فضول 300,318,487,881,1359-1360,1367,1371,1378 الفضول الغليظة 391,602,1245 فضول أبدان النساء 489 الفضول المحتبسة في الرحم 3-1102 الفضمل الباردة 2-1191
الفضول الباردة الغليظة 9-1258 فضول كثيرة 1359 ث
مادّة، موادّ، استفرغ
فضـلاء: من كان قبلنا من الفضـلاء 1243 فِعْل: فعل طبيعي 30 فعله الطبيعي 35

أفعال: الأفعال الطبيعية 31
فم: فم الرحم 668,774,803,968,1135 فم الرحم الناتئ 964,966 > سدّ، مسك، ودم
أفواه: أفواه العروق 503 أفواه العروق التي في المقعدة 987 فيض: فيض الطمث 489

قانون: القانون الطبّي 1498 قابض تقبّض 739 ث دوية
انقباض: لانقباض أطراف الأعصـاب 435
مقبّضـات 679
قالة 773.803

قُبُلْ $725,856,898,908,1116$ ↔ احتمل، وجع

$$
\text { قبول } \leftarrow \text { مني }
$$

تقبيل: وتقبيل خدّ 208
قتل: قتل الأجنّة (الأحياء) 1094,1106,1125 يقتل الجنين في
البطن 1095 قتل الجنين 1131
قَدْر: قَدْر معتدل 7-56 قدر الكفاية 9-355,868 قدر 185,646,1298

قدمان 1360,1394 والقدمان هما عضوان عصبيان 9-1368 تحلّب، أدوية، أسفل، اشتعال، نَفْخ، وجع، أورام قَرْح 325 قا
قروح 317,403,902,904,909 القروح والأودام المتولّدة في القضيب 6-315 قروحا من غير ودم 321 القروح المتولّلّدة في الخصيتين 398 قروح متنفّطة 399 القروح المتولّدة في

الرحم 901 فإن كانت القروح متأكّكة 9c24

$$
\text { قارورة } 174
$$

قرص: تقرص أمثال الدنانير 3-722 قَصب 832
تصد: يقصد الورم 362 قصدناه بالأدوية 674 قصدنا العليل بالأدوية 7-676 يقصد به إسخانه 1207 استقصاء
قضيب) 167 (passim) حكّة، ورم، أورام
قطّر (passim) 620,842,851

قطع: قطع الحبل 6-1135 يقطع للعليل العرق غي ذاته 1216 انقطاع: انقطاع عروق في الأرحام 5-714

 قليل: قليل الشـهوة 66 قليل المني 61 قلب 34,37,45 $\leftarrow$ جلاء
انقلاب: انقلاب الرحم وجسـاءه 863 تقلّص $\leftarrow$ أدوية

قلع 348
قَلَق 810
قولنج: القولنج البارد السبب 1307
قوام: قوام الباه 74
قيام: قيام (الذكر) 220
قوّي على قوّة 52,466,497-8 قوّة غريزية 7 قوّة الإنعاظ 37 قوّة الحسّ
 55,59 القوّة الماسكة 249 القوّة الدافعة 251 القوّة الدافعة

التي في الأرحام 1057 ↔ ضُعْفْ، وجع قُوْى: قوى الأدوية المفردة 1085 قىء 1147

# كبابات: كبابات حشوها قطن 441 

 كبد أكحل $\leftarrow$ فصد$$
\text { كَعْب } 1170 \text { ↔ حجامة }
$$

كعبان ャ حجامة
+178,715,1316 كُـىّ
كمّيّة 505,656
كمّد: ويكمّد به الرحم 645 وتكمّدّ بـه النساء أبدانهـّ ويكمّد الساقين 1006 ثمّ يكمّد به في في خرق بالية 1232 كمادات 641

$$
\text { كيّي: يكوي...عرق النساء } 1217
$$

كيفية 254,506,657,663 كيفية المادةّ 4344 464 كمني
كيموس 1350-675,1349 الكيموس البلغماني اللزج 1167
كيموس بلغماني 1175 كيموس دم 11319 كا 1177 كيموس حارّ 1180 كيموس ردئ $1349 \leftarrow$ ث تحلّب، أدوية، أغذية

كيموسات $\leftarrow$ تحلّب


لون 664 لون الودم 352,354 لون الجسد 354 لون المادّة 906 لين: لين ولطافة 1193
مـتن
مثانة
امتحن 1243

مادّة 287 مادةّة الزرع 285 سيلان المادةّ 904 مادّة الفضول الفاسدة 1393 ث حركة، حلّ، كيفية موادّ 352,354,1333 موادّ من فضول البدن 351 امتّد 241
امتداد: امتداد في العصب 1348 تمدّد: تمدّد في القدمـين 3-1352 مدّة 882,887,1357 إمذاء: الإمذاء الدائم 253 إمذاء الرجل 270 مَّهي: كثرة المذي 276

مرَّةٍ صفراء 1178 ↔ تحلّب، أدوية
مرّى
مروخ 1206
مرس 184 ويمرس الخرقة وقتا بعد وقت 190 أمراض: للأمراض اللازمة للحوامل 6-975 الزي
مزاج 6-60,85 مزاج الأنثيين 58 مزاج العليل 320 ك 5 سوء مسك: مسك في الفم 165 أمسك 1119
مَص": المصّ بلا شرط 702 مصّ لسان 208 وتمصّ من غير شرط 773
معدة 137,178,524 $\leftarrow$ أدوية، ريح، وجع
أمعاء

امتلاء 438,1389 الامتلاء من الغذاء 427 الامتلاء من الطعام والشراب 1199 الامتلاء من الطعام 2,1365-1201 $\leftarrow ~ و ط ء ~$ ممتلىئ ملوك 1363 منع: يمنع (منع ) من الحمل 1117-8,1120 منع المني أن ينعقد 1121-2 منع من الحبل 1122-3,1132

امتـع 1199
مَنْع
مني (passim) 38 إلقاء (المني) 14,16 قبول المني 13,17-8 إفراغ مني 40 يفرغ منيّا 43 ويغزر المني 177 سيلان المني , 248
 كثرة المني من المرأة 746 ويصير ذلك المني بمنزلة السمّ 748 المّ 748 واجتما ع المني 758 وقوع المني في الرحم 984 الم
 أوعية

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { نَبْض } \\
& \text { منابض اليد } \leftarrow \text { فَصنْ } \\
& \text { نتوء: نتوء الرحم 947,951,954 } \\
& \text { ناتئ }
\end{aligned}
$$

# نحّى: ونحّي الورق عنه 6-1225 منخران 

 نخل 120,133,150 (passim) نَزْف 652,655,660-1,702,728 652,63 نزف الدم 708 والنزف من الرحم 653 نزف الطمث 676-663 وإن (فإن) تمادى النزف ,676 701 نزف دم الحيض المفرط 688نزول: نزول الطمث 520
أنزل: ينزل الطمث 570 ينزل الدم والمثيمة 6-1155 525 أدلموية إنزال 675 إنزال الطمث 1-510

نساء
تاسل 12,53
نضّ: ولا ينضج طعامها إلا نضجا ضعيفا 5-664
أنضـج 1321
نطفة 1083 ث أدوية، أفسد نطل: وينطل موضـع العلّة 1229 نطولات 1394
نعظ 42-3,113 ينعظ إنعاظا شديدا 165 فإنّه ينعظ 176 ث قوّة إنعاظ 40,250,253 الإنعاظ الدائم 213,307

نفث: تتفث الدم 518
تَفْثْ نفث الدم
نَفْخ 863,1006 ونفخ في ما دون الشراسيف 814 نفخ في

القدمـين 1005
انتفاخ: انتفانخ بـلا وجع ولا خربان 1353 ث نَفْس 2c92,298 تنفّس: تنفّس لشكوى 210ـ نفساء 1102
نَفْي: ونفي الرياح من المفاصل 7-1326
 للنقرس الحادث من الحرارة 1475 للنقرس الحارّ السبب 1479 للنقرس الحادث من البرودة 1485 ↔ أصحاب،
وجع، أوجاع، أورام
نقع 183,389,479

استنقاع 279 الاستنقاع في المياه الباردة 950-949
منهج: المنهج الصناعي 1498
نَهْش: نهش جميع الهوامَ القتّالة 5-784 نهش الرتيلاء

$$
\text { والعقارب ذوات السموم } 1045
$$

نار 1221,1295,1300,1318,1342 نار ليّنة 104,190,1296,1318

$$
\text { نال } \leftarrow
$$

نام 295 وينام على أحد جنبيه ولا ينام على ظهره 238 (نـه نوم 1303 النوم على ظهره (ظهرهها) 307,955 النوم (نومـه) على


300 وإن لم يكن النوم نوما سـاكنا 303 ـي تخيّل

> هزال: وكانت غي غاية الهزال 547 هش": هشّ إلى الباه 66 انهضام
> تهلّل: تهلّل إلى رؤية من يحبّ 209 هـمّ: الهمّ الدائم 521 ــ
> هوامّ

هيّيّ: ويهيّئ من ذلك (منه) شيار 4,940-633 هـا اهتاج: ويهتاج الإنسان حينئذ إلى الباه 241 هيْج وسكنِ (الذكر) 1-220
وَجِْ

وَجْع 353,355 وجع الصلب والرقبة والرأس والعينـين 8-827 وجع في القبل شديد 801 وجع السرّة والمعدة 802 وجع 802 وـع شديد في الظهر 5-804 قوّة الوجع 809 وجع في المعدة 814 وجع الأرحام والمعدة 1034 وجع مـع ثقل في الورك 1257, بلا ضربان 1176 وجع شديد 1178 وجع المفاصل 1268-9,1315 وجع الظهر (والمفاصل) 7-1278,1306 وجع الركبتين والوركين 1338 وجع مخصوص بالقديمـين شديد 1370,1374, مؤذ 1347-8 شدّة الوجع 1350 وجع النقرس 1376,1386 وجع المفاصل والنقرس 1346-1409-140 $\leftarrow$ حدّة،

## أصحاب، قلّة، انتفاخ

أوجاع: أوجاع النفس 522 أوجاع المفاصل والنقرس 1456 أوجاع النقرس الحارّ المرّى أى 1478 ـ أطلق

$$
\text { وعّةّ } \leftarrow \text { ذ أصكراب }
$$

أوِردة 239 الأوردة والعصب التي في الذكر 214 وركّ: الورك الأيسر 1172 ـ حقّ، وجع

$$
\text { وركان 243,308,1070,1304 } \leftarrow \text { ثقل }
$$

ورم (passim) 342 ورم القضيب وانتفاخه 340-339 الأودام
المتولّدة في الخصيتين 350 الودم الحادث في 352 في المذاكير
358 ورم الأنثيين 4-373 ودم المذاكير 390 ورم أو جرح
 فإن كان المرم في فم الرحم 2-801 وإن كان الم المرم المرم في جانب الرحم المؤخر 804 الورم المزمن 891 ودم النقرس في الرجلين واليدين والركبتين 6-1465 انفجر، قروح، لون
أورام 315,330,337 الأورام المتولّدة في الرحم 794 أورام في


الدموية 1471 أودام القدمين 1474 ـ قروح
اتّصال $\leftarrow$ جنـن

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { وَطْء } 438 \text { الوطء على الامتلاء } 428 \\
& \text { أوعية المني 251-249 } \\
& \text { وَقْت } \leftarrow \text { مرس } \\
& \text { ولَّد } 1057 \\
& \text { ولادة 1148,1153 الولادة الطبيعية } 1054 \text { ولا تسلس الولادة } \\
& \text { 1064-5 يسهل الولادة c1078 } \\
& \text { أيام } \\
& \text { توليد } 11 \\
& \text { تولّد: تولّد (هذه) العلّة 1175,1177 تولّد (هذا) الداء 1191,1396 } \\
& \text { يُّس 61,195 لإفراط اليبس } 512 \\
& \text { يد } \\
& \text { أيام: أيام الولادة } 1003
\end{aligned}
$$

## INDEX OF PROPER NAMES

## أبو جعفر أحمد بن أبي خالد 3-2

 إبن ماسويه 112,581,1290أثينيا 233 أرسطاطاليس الفيلسوف 68 إسحق 1338
إسحق بن سليمان 373 إسـحق بن عمران 590,1268 إفليمون صـاحب الفراسـة 206 بولس الطبيب 862 جالينوس , 53,222,233,339,545,740,783,821,977,1043,1182 1215,1381
102,464,705,859,942,971,1092,1101,1217, دياسقوريدوس 1224,1476
روفس (الحكيم) 507-5,516,533

سـابور 457,1424
السريانيون 236 الشام 237
1458 عيسى
قسططا بن لوقا 1205
كتاب أفيديميا 545
كتابه في الأدوية المقابلة للأدواء 783,1044
كتابه في الخدر 1205 كتاب النجح 580

## GLOSSARY OF TECHNICAL TERMS (ENGLISH)

abdomen $\rightarrow$ rubbing
abdominal wall $275 \rightarrow$ penis, peritoneum
abortifacients (abortifacients and contraceptives) 60-1,290-3
abortion 61-2
abscess $\rightarrow$ ulcers
absinth 268,275,286,293 (decoction of -) 265-6 (Roman) 267, 289
abstention (sexual) 65
асасіа 249,254,257-8,260-1,271-3,283-4,309-310
acorn 251 (aril of -) $273 \rightarrow$ suppositories
aetiology $8,17,36,52 \rightarrow$ amenorrhea
affections (of the soul) 286
afflictions 42 (psychical) 41, 263
agaric 275,301
air (air or vaporous air inflating and stiffening the penis) 22
alkekengi 256,278
almonds 245-6,266,280 (bitter) 267 (sweet) 267
aloe 260 (red socotric) 299 (red) 306-7,309 (socotric) $307 \rightarrow$ pill
aloewood 275 (Indian) 246 (socotric) 267
alum 37,63,258,272,276,293 (Yemenite) 268 (burned) 273
amber (yellow) 273
amenorrhea 39,43,52,55 (aetiology of -) 41 (symptoms of -) 41-2
anatomy (and physiology of the sexual organs) 21
aneth 251,298-9,303
angina pectoris 277
animal 19
animals 19,239 (survival of the species of -) 19,239 (reproduction of -) $19 \rightarrow$ power
anise 244-7,265-9,288,299-300,307,309
ants (black) 247
anus 273
aphrodisiacs 29
apples 272
arteries $26 \rightarrow$ pulsation
arthritis $299,305 \rightarrow$ pill, storax
asafetida 299,308
asarabacca 246,288
ashes $63,294 \rightarrow$ boxthorn, grape
ash-tree 244,247
asparagus 244,246
asthma 274
back $250 \rightarrow$ pain, penis
balm of Gilead 303
bandages (linen) 56 (cloth) 259,284
barley $248,256,275,279-283,289,294,306,309$
basil 273
bath 265,280,289
baths (frequent cold) 33 (sitz baths) 55-6 (cold) 252
bathing 57,59,65,284,297
bdellium 257,260-1,308 (false) 260,303 (blue) 267,281,299302,306,309 (burned kernels of -) $271 \rightarrow$ pill
beans 29,58,243,256-7,265,287 (red) 266
beard $\rightarrow$ castrated
behen (red, white) 244
belly $\rightarrow$ moisture
ben oil 247,275
beverage $\rightarrow$ lust
bile (yellow, black) 27,271 (superfluities of yellow bile or of coarse black bile) 52,276 (sharp yellow) 258 (black) 264,267
(yellow bile and its sharpness) 270 (yellow) 296 (hot) $309 \rightarrow$ decoctions, phlegm
bindweed 308
birds $\rightarrow$ hair, meat
birth control 62
birthwort 62, 266 (different species of -) 282 (long species of -) 291
bishop's weed 245,265-6,287-8
bites $\rightarrow$ vermin
black nightshade 249,251,253,256,278-9,281,306,308-310
bladder $\rightarrow$ kidneys, storax, tumour
bleeding $36,43,65,305$ (from the basilic or median cubital vein) 53,277 (of the veins) 256 (from the upper parts of the body) 270 (of the saphenous vein) 295 (of median cubital vein) 296 (from the inner side of the foot) $305 \rightarrow$ blood, venesection
blood 27,44-5 (turning into semen) 26 (menstrual) 45,262-3,270 (surplus of -) 45 (sharp) 258 (blood vessels) 262 (to draw blood) 265,272 (loss of blood occurring to women) 270-3 $\rightarrow$ amenorrhea, chest, decoction, drugs, hypermenorrhea, pessary, pessaries, powder, retention, suppository, uterus
body $19,35,58,245,247$ (withered) 45 (a woman's body) $51 \rightarrow$ castrated, heart, testicles, venesection
bodies $\rightarrow$ women
bones (marrow of -) 243
borax (burned) 255
boxthorn 284 (ashes of -) 256
brain $\rightarrow$ sensation, sperm
brains 29,243
bramble 284
bread (solid) 58 (fortified) 287
breasts $\rightarrow$ uterus
breathing (difficulty of -) 47
buttocks 254 (cold of -) 245-6 $\rightarrow$ pustule, veins
cabbage 279,286,292,294,306,309
cadmia 254,258
calf $\rightarrow$ marrow
calves $\rightarrow$ fat
callosity $\rightarrow$ uterus
camomile 257, 269,275-6,298-9
camphor $35,250,253-4,273,283,306$
caper (caper root rinds) 298
caraway 246 (black) 257,307
cardamom 63,245-6,291 (smaller) 248,288
carrot 245-6,248 (wild) 247,266
carrots 244,247
castor oil plant 267,303
castoreum 62,265,267-8,275-6,287-8,291,295,300,303,307
castrated (a castrate cannot grow a beard, his body is hairless) $25,241 \rightarrow$ veins
cat-thyme 266
cauterise 297
cauterisation 38,298 (a small rupture to be healed by) 259
celery 265-8,275,287-8,299-301,307
centaury 268,296 (great) 292 (small) 292
ceruse $37,249,251,254-5,258$ (white) 257
chaste-tree $32,250,252$
chest (to bring up blood from the chest) 263
chickens $300 \rightarrow$ fat, meat
chickpeas $29,58,243,245,257,287,300$
childbed (a woman in -) 291
childbirth (difficult) 58,288-290 (causes) 59,289 (treatment) 59 , 289-290 (causing death) 62 (a medicine good for difficult childbirth and for the sting of a tarantula and scorpions) 288
cinnamon 62,246,265-9,294,307 (Chinese) 245-6,248,267,288, 291
clove 245-8,288
cocculus indicus plant 300
coitus 20-1,29-30,243 (Western Latin tracts on -) 22 (Arabic treatises on -) $23 \rightarrow$ intercourse
colchicum 306-8 (white) $308 \rightarrow$ pill
colic $\rightarrow$ suppository
collyrium (the horned poppy collyrium) 254,256,309
colocynth 301 (pulp of -) 292,296,299-302,306,309 (composition of the oil of colocynth) 301
colophony 298
common germander 266
compresses (for the retention of the menstrual blood) 44, 269
conception (instruments for -) 19 (the part of both partners in -)
21 (to prevent -) 63
congestion $\rightarrow$ head
consumption 264
contraception 61
contraceptives (magical) $61 \rightarrow$ abortifacients
contractions (convulsive) 46,274
contraria contrariis curantur 17,32
convulsions (and heaviness in the hips and back) 277
coral 273 (burned) 271
coriander $250,253,272,279,299,306,310$
costus 30,244,246,275-6,299,303
cow (the marrow [of the bones] of a -) 257-8 $\rightarrow$ dung, gall, milk
cowrie (burned) 271,273
craving $\rightarrow$ foodstuffs
cucumber 251,253 (squirting) $269,281,291,303,310$
cumin $257,261,265,307 \rightarrow$ electuary
cupping glasses $43,45,48,256,264,272,275$
cyclamen $60,62-3,269,291$ (root of - hung on the thigh of a woman) 290
cypress (nuts and leaves of -) 260-1
dates 273
decoction 278,282,286,293 (of roots) 265-6,280 (decoction which makes the menstrual blood flow) $266 \rightarrow$ absinth
decoctions $43,45,53,55$ (decoctions and electuaries which bring the yellow bile down) 271
deer (burned horn of -) 271,273 $\rightarrow$ marrow
diaphragm (respiratory) 274-5
diet 55
dill 269
diseases $8,9,17,240,262$ (of the head) 11 (sexual diseases occurring to men) 17 (affecting women) 17,39,40 (occurring in the genitals) 21,239 (the examination and treatment of the patient in the case of women's diseases) 50-1 (caused by cold in the intestines) 247 (affecting the stomach) 263-4 $\rightarrow$ pill
dittany 266
donkey $\rightarrow$ milk
doves $\rightarrow$ excrements
dragon's blood 261,273,282
dressings 37
dropsy 45, 264,270
drug (simple) 18 (compound) 45 (a simple or a compound drug) $269 \rightarrow$ ulcers
drugs 9,32,43,50,60-1 (softening the stomach and dissolving winds) 38,260 (fragrant) 48 (simple and compound) 55 (compound) 56 (fertility drugs) 61 (which make the urine flow abundantly) 265 (astringent and thickening drugs which retain the blood) 271 (repellent) 278 (warm dissolving) 298
dryness 242
duck-weed 249,306
dung (of a cow) 56,285,298 (of a goat) 297-8 (dry) 298 (of a sheep) $310 \rightarrow$ excrements
dysentery 271
earth (Cimolian) 37,256 (sealed) 271,282 (Armenian) 273,282, 284
earth-almonds 244
earthenware (fired) 256
egg (egg white) 255,261,279,282-3,306,309-310 (yolk of eggs) 29,55,243,245,256-8 (yolk of a roasted egg) 281
ejaculation $\rightarrow$ sperm
electuary 58 (of spices) 260 (called dehamurtā) 266 (of cumin) 260,266,275,306 (of gallnut) 268,272-3 (good for a wind arising in the uterus, for pain in the uterus and stomach in the case of pregnant women, prevents miscarriage, opens an obstruction) 288 (of peppers) 298,306 $\rightarrow$ lust
electuaries $45 \rightarrow$ decoctions
emission (nocturnal emission of sperm) 252-3
emissions (nocturnal) 34,253 (astringent or thickening) 45
endive 278-9,306
enemas 29,65,296-7 (heating) 247
epigastrium $\rightarrow$ pain, swelling
epilepsy 251
erection 33,241,247,249-250 (two causes of -) 22 (origin of the erection, sperm and lust) 23 (power of erection reaching the penis from the heart) 23,241 (permanent) $253 \rightarrow$ flatulence, pneuma
eunuchs 66,304
Euphorbia pityusa (milk of -) 301
excrements (of a cat) 63,294 (of doves) 280-1 $\rightarrow$ dung
eyes $\rightarrow$ pain
faculties (animal) 23
faeces $\rightarrow$ retention
fänì 245-6,307-8
fat (of geese and chickens) 279-280 (of geese, chickens and calves) 281 (of a goose) 55,283 (of calves) 303 (of a vulture) 310 (of a he-goat) 310
feathers $\rightarrow$ hair
feet 67 (swollen) 45,57,270,286 (tension and swelling of -) 304 $\rightarrow$ pain
fennel 247,265-7,307 (broad species of -) 268
fenugreek 55,59,279-280,283,289,296
fever (high) 277
fevers (burning) 42,264
figs $29,55,243,280,283$
fish (eye of a salt-water fish) 63,294 (fresh) 248 (fish glutin) 260
fissures $\rightarrow$ ulcers
flatulence $23,29,31$ (descending from the heart to the penis) 22,240 (filling the penis and causing an erection) 22,241 (necessary for an erection) 28 (internal) 245 (thick) $256 \rightarrow$ foodstuff, remedies, wind
flatulences (flatulences streaming to the nerve of the penis and arousing someone to intercourse) 250
flax 279-280
fleawort 278,306,309
foetus (connection between foetus and uterus like that between the fruit and the tree) 57,285 (dead) 59,289 (dying in the womb of the woman) 62
foetuses (dead) 51
fomentations 67,306
food 9,24,29,57,242-4,296-7 (slightly digested) 45 (relaxing) 57 (cold) $65,251,253$ (coarse food producing winds) 260 (solid) 264,270,297
foods (hot) 250,252
foodstuff 31 (containing flatulence, warmth and moisture best for the production of the sperm) 28 (hot) 32-3 (cold) 33-4 $\rightarrow$ regimen
foodstuffs (pregnant women craving for bad foodstuffs/food) 41,57-8,264,287
francolin $\rightarrow$ meat
frankincense 255,257,261,272,282 (the male species of -) 260 , 287 (rinds of -) 260
fruit 58
fumigate 275,285,291
fumigation 56,63,293
fumigations 48,63-4
galbanum 63,265,293
galingale 29,243-8
gall (of a cow) 302
gallnut 271-2,284 (burned) $273 \rightarrow$ electuary
gallnuts 37,258
garden cress 244,292 (white) 308
garden-mint 265
garlic (wild) $\rightarrow$ scordium
geese $\rightarrow$ fat
genitals 56 (male and female) $240 \rightarrow$ diseases, organs
gentian 266,268
gillyflower $30,247,257,284,303$
ginger 29,243-8,275,288,307-8 (wild) 287-8
goat (fat of the kidneys of a -) $257 \rightarrow$ dung, fat, milk
goatsbeard 273
gonorrhea $33 \rightarrow$ sperm
goose $\rightarrow$ fat
gourd 248,251,253-4,282,306
gout 17 (causes) 66-7,299,304-310 $\rightarrow$ pill, plaster
grape (grape vine) 255 (ashes of the branches of a grape vine)
255, 258
grapes (unripe, sour) 251,271 (inspissated) 265
groin 46,275
gum 283
gum ammoniacum 267,299,300,303,306
gum Arabic 271,273,2
gum tragacanth 261,282-3
gynaecology 11,17
haematite 36,254
haemoptysis 271
haemorrhage 63
hair (of the head and eyelashes reduced by much sexual intercourse) 25 (of the beard and rest of the body increased by much sexual intercourse) 25 (much hair originating from excessive warmth) 26 (pubic) 28 (well-haired human beings and thickly feathered birds have much sexual intercourse) 26,242 (hair and feathers originate from warmth and moisture) $242 \rightarrow$ beard, castrated
harmel 64,294,298-300,303,306-7
hartwort 288
head (congestion in -) $64 \rightarrow$ pain
health (preservation of -) 9 (depending on the balance of the humours) 27
heart 23 (sends the animal pneuma everywhere in the body) 23,241 $\rightarrow$ erection, pulsation
heat 252 (natural) 25,265 (accidental) 25
hedge-mustard (red and white) 244
hemlock 276
haemorrhoids 263
hemp 251,253
henbane 249,251-3,276
henna 275,306
hernia (scrotal) $\rightarrow$ ruptures
hiera fiqrā 265,267,300-1,308
hip $\rightarrow$ pain, penis
honey 244-5,247,256,265,268-9,280-1,288,291,293,298,302
horehound 266
horned poppy $\rightarrow$ collyrium
horse (hoof of -) 63,294
horse-fennel 246,288,300
humour (mucous viscous) 64, 295 (cold) 65,296 (heat and sharpness of -) 278 (sanguinous) 295 (hot) 295,304 (bad) 304 (cold and coarse) 304
humours 58 (balance of -) 27 (superfluous) 35 (doctrine of -) 36 (bad) 66,306 (thickness of -) 253 (coarse viscous) 262 (cold, coarse) $296 \rightarrow$ oils, storax
humoral (theory) 17,35,64,66
humoralism (Galenic) 41
hypermenorrhea $44 \rightarrow$ blood
hyssop 268,280
imagination 22,240 (reviving the former sexual pleasures imprinted in the memory) 22 (of the soul) 253
impotence 18,21-2,29,248 $\rightarrow$ intercourse
inflammation 49,55,64-5,282,295,304 $\rightarrow$ uterus
insufflation 279
intercourse (sexual) 19,22-3,25-6,47,66-7,239,240-1,253,297, 304-5 (proper conditions for -) 27 (imaginary) 34 (with a full stomach) 38,259 (evacuates the seed retained in the vessels of a virgin) 49 (lack of sexual intercourse and impotence) $240 \rightarrow$ coitus, flatulence, hair, lust, power
intestines $260 \rightarrow$ diseases
iris (Florentine) 293
itching 37 (in the penis) 254 (in the uterus) $283 \rightarrow$ ulcers
jasmine 247,275,289,299,308
joints $66,304 \rightarrow$ winds
jujube 278,282
kids $\rightarrow$ meat
kidneys 247 (cold of -) 245 (cold from the kidneys and bladder) $245 \rightarrow$ rupture
knot-grass 273
labour (difficult/hard) 55,284 (labour pains) 288-9
laburnum (Indian) 278
laurel 283,299,303 (berries of -) 266 (rind of the root of -) 293
(laurel leaves) 298
lavender 266,300
laxative 285,287
laxatives 256
lead (to tie to one's back a plate of lead) 249 (piece of lead convex-shaped like a spoon) 259
leek 292,299,307-8
lemon-grass 265-8,276,280
lentils (cooked) 251,282,310
leopard's bane 287-8
lettuce 249-251,306
licorice 282
life $\rightarrow$ pulsation
lily 268-9,275,280-1,299
liniment 309 (astringent liniment dissolving the winds) 259,297
linseed 244-5,280,283,289,296
litharge $251,254,258,283$
liver 247 (cold) $270 \rightarrow$ lust
loins $\rightarrow$ pain
long pepper 29,243-6,248,307
lotus fruit 272
lucerne 245-6
lupine 62,257,293 (bitter) 291 (flour of -) 291,298
lust 29 (sexual lust) $21,241,265$ (coming from the liver) 234,241 (means to increase/stimulate the lust for sexual intercourse/coitus) 28,31-2,244-8 (psychological means to increase lust) 30,248-9 (a means to extinguish the lust for coitus) 250 (a means to extinguish the lust and to dry up the sperm) $251 \rightarrow$ erection, power, warmth
lycium 260,283,302
mace 245
madder 266,293,300
magic (magical prescriptions) 18 (magical means) 60 (magic
preparation) $\rightarrow$ contraceptives
malady (called 'ishq) 11
mallow (wild) 256
manna (from Khurāsān) 278
marjoram 269,276,280,298
marrow (of a calf) 280 (of a deer) 280
marshmallow 63,256,261,279,282,289,294,309
marsh-nut 303
massage 48 (of sides and waist) 59,289 (vigorous massage to hands and feet) 275
masturbate 242
mastic 248,260-1,266,280,286,300,307,309 (from the turpen-tine-tree) $303 \rightarrow$ pill
matter 55,262-3,270,281,303,305 (hot, cold and superfluous) 36,255-6 (coarse) 297 (superfluous) 306
meat 29,243 (of small cattle) 245 (of young small birds and chickens) 245 (of one year old sheep) 245 (of kids, partridges, francolins, pigeons, and chickens) 272
medicine 11 (practice of -) 6 (field of -) 7 (ancient) 23 (rules of -) 310
medicines (compound) 18
melancholy 11
melilot 257,269,279-280,298
member 303
members 303 (sexual) 20 (weakness of -) 66 (cold) 302 (fleshy, containing much blood) 304 (full with nerves) $304 \rightarrow$ oils
membrane (tear of the -) 259
memory (increase of -) $245 \rightarrow$ imagination
menstruate $39,262 \rightarrow$ blood, powder
menstruation 40,67,264,305 (unbalanced) 262 (heavy) $263 \rightarrow$ women
midwife 50,51,53,275,277
midwives 51
milk 309 (of a cow) 247,268 (fresh) 247 (curdled) 248 (breast milk) 280,283 (of a donkey and goat) 281 (of a woman) 282
millet (common) 272
mint $60,62,246-7,267-9,275-6,280,289,292,294,298,303$
miscarriage 58,281,286-7,291 (prevention of -) $57 \rightarrow$ electuary, ulcers
mispels 272
moisture 252,261 (increases sperm) 27,28,242 (viscous) 31, 249,259 (excess of moisture) 55,284 (streaming to the bottom of the belly) 262 (cold viscous) $304 \rightarrow$ foodstuff, hair, warmth
mountain-mint 266
mountain-origan 246
mouth $\rightarrow$ vagina
movement $\rightarrow$ sensation
mugwort 294
muscles $\rightarrow$ nerve
mushroom 272 (Maltese) 260,284
mushrooms 272 (juice of -) 271
musk 275
mustard 64,294,298
myrobalan (yellow) 306-8 (belleric) 307-8 (emblic) 308
myrrh 260-1,268,291,309 (red) 255,257,268-9,276,281-2,288, 291,293,302
myrtle 252,271-2,282 (berries of -) 271,284,300
narcissus 247,303
nard 30,247,272,279,286 (Indian) 265,267,275,280-1,300
natron $258,268,302$
nature 19 (Nature has formed the members of the body with utmost perfection) 21
navel $\rightarrow$ pain
neck $\rightarrow$ pain
nenuphar 248
nerve (thick diaphragmatic nerve between the muscles and the
thigh) 295 (sciatic) 297-8 (in the ball of the thumb) 298
nerves $66,304 \rightarrow$ member, wind
nettle (Roman) 244,246
nigella 269
nose $56 \rightarrow$ uterus
nosebleed 263,273
nosebleeds (some women have many nosebleeds) 263
nutmeg 245,288
obstetrics 17
oils 34,56,65,67,297 (cold, moist) 248 (fragrant) 287 (moistening, dissolving) 289 (cold) 296 (hot dissolving) 299 (make vapours and winds collected in the organs come forth, dissolve the humours and cook them, and warm the members) 302 (hot) $310 \rightarrow$ ointments, orifice
ointments 56,57 (with cold oils) 65
olives (oil from green, unripened olives) 256
olive oil 62
onion 246 (Syrian) 244
onions (white) 245
opium $37,250,258,276,279,288,309$
opopanax 267,299,307-8
orache 248
orchid 300,308
organs 261 (procreative) 18,239-240 (natural activities of -)
22,240 (principal) $241 \rightarrow$ anatomy, testicles
orifice $\rightarrow$ uterus
origan 298,306 (origan-extract) 246-8 (wild) 247 (Persian) 308
ovaries $\rightarrow$ testicles
oxymel 60,289
pain 55,282 (in the loins, neck, head and eyes) 42,264 (heavy pain in the vagina) 53,277 (of the navel and stomach) 53,277 (heavy pain in the back) 53,277 (under the epigastrium) 53,277 (throbbing pain in the uterus) 55,281 (in the hip) 65,295 (severe) 65,277,295 (sharp, heavy and throbbing) 255 (heavy hurting pain especially occurring to the feet) 304 $\rightarrow$ pill, poultice, suppository
palpation $\rightarrow$ uterus
papyrus (burned) 35,254,273
partridges $\rightarrow$ meat
pathology 11 (humoral) 27
pear 287
pears 272
penis $34,35,241,292$ (anatomy of -) 20 (hollow nerve of -) 22 (endowed with a natural, special function) 22,240 (anatomical description of -) 23 (rubbing of penis and testicles) 29-30 (long and swollen) 31,249 (tension in -) 31 (to rub the penis with cooling remedies and to anoint it) 34-35,253 (to rub the penis and testicles) 247-8 (to rub the abdominal wall and the penis) 247 (to rub the back, penis and testicles) 249 (to rub on the penis and hips) 250 (to anoint the penis and the back) 251 $\rightarrow$ air, flatulence(s), itching, plaster, pustule, tumour, ulcer(s)
pennyroyal 246-7,291
pepper 244-5,275,291,293,307 (white and black) 246 (Chinese)
265 (white) 276,288,307 $\rightarrow$ electuary
peppercorns 29,244
pepperwort 300 (Indian) 300,308 $\rightarrow$ pill
peritoneum (of the abdominal wall) 259
pessary $62,273,291,293$ (ending the loss of blood) $272 \rightarrow$ saffron
pessaries 45,63 (which make the menstrual blood stream quickly) 268
pharmacology 18
phlegm 27,267,300 (superfluous phlegm or bile) 45 (moist) 246
(coarse) $301 \rightarrow$ pill
physiognomy 30
physiology $8 \rightarrow$ anatomy
pica $58 \rightarrow$ foodstuffs
pigeons $\rightarrow$ meat
pill 273 (sagapenum pill) 65,306 (composition of sagapenum pill) 299 ("well-fabricated" pill) 65,296 (composition of "well-fabricated" pill) 299 (colchicum pill) 67,296 (composition of colchicum pill) 306 (pill for the retention of the menstrual blood and for diseases of the uterus) 267 (of aloe) 296 (of mastic) 296 (pepperwort pill) 296,306 ("stinking pill") 296,299 (stomaticum pill) 296,306 (of bdellium) 298 (for coarse phlegm and arthritis and a wind in the body) 300 (for pain of the back and arthritis) 300-1 (of pyrethrum) 303 (good for gout) 307-8 (good for arthritis, gout and winds locked in the intestines and sides) 308-9
pills 43,45,273 (compound) 67 (little) 300,301,307,309
pine nut (resin of -) 272
pine nuts 29,243,245-6 (burned rind of -) 36,254
pistachio 246
placenta 289 (extraction of -) 63,294-5 (a means to expel the placenta) 293
plaster 37-8 (for tumours on the penis) 254 (for a tumour and swelling of the penis) 255 (for tumours on the testicles) 256 (for a consumptive itch/itching in the testicles) 258 (sticking) 297 (for a tumour of gout) 309 (for bloody tumours and gout) 309
plasters 36-7,53,65,67,297 (with an astringent, contracting power) 38,260 (hot) 310
pleasure 19,239 (sexual) 19-20 $\rightarrow$ imagination
plums 253
pneuma (animal pneuma which fills the hollow nerve and thereby causes an erection) 22 (animal pneuma originating in the heart) 23 (psychical pneuma) 23 (natural pneuma) 23 (animal pneuma) $23 \rightarrow$ heart
pomegranate $271,282,287$ (flower of -) 251-2,254,257,261,271, 273,284 (rind(s) of -) 257,272,282,284 (sour) 284
pomegranates (bitter) 272
poppy 282
potency 244-6,248 $\rightarrow$ electuary, power, vigour
poultice 279-280,291,297-8 (composition of a poultice good for pain of the knees and thighs) 303
poultices 53,57-8,65,67,286-7,306
powder 44 (compound) 58 (of seeds) 260 (for women who cannot menstruate) 267 (which stops the loss of blood) 273 (good for pregnant women which expels the winds) 287
powders 45
power 24 (sexual power and lust in animals) 18 (innate) 18,239 (for sexual intercourse) 28,241-2 (retentive power) 33,250 (expelling power in the vescicles) 251 (expelling power in the uterus) $289 \rightarrow$ erection, pulsation, sensation, testicles, vigour
pregnancy $57,287 \rightarrow$ women
priapism 31,34,249-250
procreation 19,239
prolapse $\rightarrow$ uterus
psyche $\rightarrow$ lust, afflictions
pulsation (the power of pulsation and life reaches the arteries from the heart) 241
pulse (small and weak) 46-7,274
purgatives $45,65,297$
purslane 250-1,253,271-2,278,282-3,306,309
pustule (remedy for a pustule on the penis and buttocks) $255 \rightarrow$ tumour
pyrethrum 245-7 $\rightarrow$ pill
quince $271,287,309$
quinces 272
radish 246
raisins (seedless) 247,257,310
rectum (relaxation and protrusion of -) 56,284
reed (odiferous) 269 (sweet) 288,299-300
regimen 265,277,285,308 (of light nourishment) 53 (bad) 66 (of foodstuff which digests quickly) 67 (reducing) 263 (rigorous) 299 (strict) 300,307 (too little) 305
reproduction 20 (treatises on) $21 \rightarrow$ animals, testicles
resin 258
resins 268,299,302,303
retention (retention of the menstrual blood) 47,262-9,277 (of the urine) 53,277 (of the faeces) 53,277 (natural or accidental) $262 \rightarrow$ amenorrhea, pill, suffocation, urine
rhubarb (Syrian) 266
rice 272
rocket 244-7
roots $\rightarrow$ decoction 265
roses 272-3,282,284 (oil of roses) 35,249-251,253-8,260-1, 269,273,278-280,282-4,286,306,309-310 (leaves of -) 255 , 282,306 (seed of -) 258 (preserved) 278
rosewater 284 (rosewater-syrup) 248
rubbing (thighs and abdomen) 59,289 (soles of the feet and between the thighs) $301 \rightarrow$ penis, testicles, uterus
rue 251-2,269, 293,301,303,310
rupture $\rightarrow$ cauterisation, vein
ruptures (and scrotal hernia occurring in the testicles) 38,259-261
safflower (pith of safflower seed) 307
saffron 63,244-5,254-5,256,260-1,279-283,294,307,309 (composition of the saffron-pessary) 279
sagapenum 260,267,280,299-302,306-7,309 $\rightarrow$ pill
sajjiznaiyā 298,306
salt (naphtha) 300 (Indian) 300
salve 258,279 (soft) 254 (smooth) 281
salves 53 (dissolving) 280
sandalwood (red and white) 256 (red) 279,309 (different kinds of -) 306 (red and yellow) 309
sarcocol 260-261,300,302,307,309
savin 62,266-7,291
scammony $267,292,299-300,302,309$
sciatica 17,64-5,295-304
scirrhus $\rightarrow$ uterus
scordium (which is wild garlic) 310
scorpions (poisonous) $58 \rightarrow$ childbirth
scrotal hernia $38 \rightarrow$ ruptures
sea-water 255
sebesten 278
secacul 243,245-8
semen 240 (retention of the semen) $47 \rightarrow$ blood, sperm
sempervivum 249,278
senna (Meccan) 300
sensation (the power of sensation and movement reaches the veins from the brain) 241
sesame $244,246,248,257,268,289,302$
sexuality (history of -) 21
sheep $\rightarrow$ dung, meat
silk 266
skink 243-4
sneezing 56,60,63,285,290,294
sniff 275
sniffing 48
soapwort 63,275,290,294
socket (of the hip) 295
soles $\rightarrow$ rubbing
soot (of a lamp) 275
sore (open sore on the testicles) $37 \rightarrow$ ulcers
soul $19,25,239,241,245,253 \rightarrow$ affections, imagination
southernwood 286
spasm $\rightarrow$ vesicles
specula (vaginal) 51
sperm 29, 240-3 (origin of -) 21 (reaching the penis from the brain) 23,241 (originating from all parts of the body) 24 (is nothing but a residue, is nothing else than blood) 24,26 (meagre) 28,242 (thick) 28 (thin, watery) 28 (constant involuntary flow of sperm) 33,250 (surplus of -) 33-4 (surplus and corruption of a woman's sperm) 47 (the concept that women have sperm) 47 (both the female - and the male sperm necessary for the formation of the embryo) 47 (ejaculation of -) 241 (abundant sperm) 247 (to expel the sperm) 251 (the cause of a constant excretion of sperm resulting from amorous toying) 251 (a means to stop the flow of sperm and an ejaculation caused by amorous toying) 251 (a means good for frequent ejaculations caused by amorous toying) 252 (a means to prevent the sperm from coagulation) $292 \rightarrow$ emission, erection, lust, moisture, semen, suffocation, testicles, women
spermaduct (formed in the best possible way) 20
spikenard (Indian) 246
spurge $301,303,307,309$
Star-of-Bethlehem 244
sternutatories 48
sting $\rightarrow$ tarantula
stomach 247 (affliction of the stomach) 58 (full) $259 \rightarrow$ drugs, intercourse, pain, winds
stomaticum $\rightarrow$ pill
stone (dry) 60,290
storax 288,303 (Cretensian) 60 (composition of the oil of storax good for arthritis, the cold members, the bladder and the kidneys, and hard tumours) 302 (dry) 302
suffocation (hysterical) 45-8,56,274-6 (symptoms of -) 46,274-5 (occurring in women because of the retention of sperm or menstruation) 48,274-5
suffumigations 44,48
sugar (liquid crystalline) 245 (crystalline) 287-8
sulphur 63,293 (yellow) 37,258
sumac 251,273
superfluity 275,304 (coarse) 267,277 (mucous) $306 \rightarrow$ bile, phlegm
superfluities 66,254,262,280,291,304-5 (hot, cold) 53,67 (hot) 256 (cold and coarse) 257,299 (coarse) $299 \rightarrow$ women
suppository 62,290-3 (that will make the menstrual blood stream copiously) 268-9 (for loss of blood) 272-3 (for tumours in the uterus) 279-280 (for the removal of the coarse viscous phlegm, for pain in the back and for a colic) 302
suppositories $43,45,53,55,279$ (similar to acorns in size) 302
suppuration 304
survival $\rightarrow$ animals, testicles
swelling (under the epigastrium) $277 \rightarrow$ feet, tumour
symptology 8,17
syrup (astringent) 271
ṭabashirr (white) 273
tar 62,290,292
tamarisk (berries of the Oriental tamarisk) 271 (fruit of the -) 272
tarantula (sting of -) $58 \rightarrow$ childbirth
temperament (natural or accidental bad) 41,262 (of the patient) $254 \rightarrow$ testicles
$\operatorname{tar} 275$
testicles 26 (function of -) 24 (of women, namely, the ovaries) 24 (heat moving from the testicles to the body) 25,241 (providing the body with warmth and strength and transforming the sperm, rank among the principal organs) 26 (mere receptacles) 26 (temperament of -) 27,241-2 (temperaments of -) 28 (a power reaching the whole body from -) 241 (cause of the survival of the species and of reproduction) 241 (to moisten the testicles and cool their heat) $248 \rightarrow$ penis, plaster, ruptures, sore, tumours, ulcers
"testicles of the fox" (remedy) 244
"Theodoretus" 296
therapy 8
theriac 298.306
thigh $\rightarrow$ nerve
thighs $46 \rightarrow$ rubbing, soles
thirst 277
thyme 267-8,280,293 (leaves of dried -) 309
tumour (and pustule/swelling on the penis) 36,254 (in the uterus) 53 (tumour or wound in the uterus) 269 (pus of the tumour reaching the bladder) 281 (chronic) $281 \rightarrow$ plaster
tumours (hot or cold tumours on the testicles) 36-7,255-7 (in the uterus) 52-3,276-281 (tumours accompanying gout and arthritis) $304 \rightarrow$ plaster, storax, ulcers
turbith 301,308 (with a white, hollow stem) 267,299-300 (white) 306-7,309
turnip 243-6,288
turpentine-tree $\rightarrow$ mastic
ulcer (very moist ulcer on the penis) 36 (vesicatory) 37 (on the scrotum) 37
ulcers (ulcers and tumours on the penis) $35,36,254$ (vesicatory ulcers, itchings, open sores, and fissures on the testicles) 37 , 257-8 (in the uterus) 50 (ulcers and wounds in the uterus, originating from a hot tumour, abscess, hot drug, or miscarriage) 54,281-3 (symptoms of these ulcers) 55,281-2
urethra 254
urine (analysis of -) 6 (colour of urine of women suffering from amenorrhea) $42,264 \rightarrow$ drugs, retention
uterus 268-9,276,278 (a natural or accidental affliction of the substance of -) 41,262 (disease of the uterus such as callosity, scirrhus, or inflammation) 41 (a connection between the uterus and the breasts) 45 (wandering) 46,47,48,49 (orifice of -) $50,53,56,63,277,293$ (rubbing of the orifice of the uterus with fragrant oils) 50,275 (hardness and obstruction of -) 55 (prolapse of -) 55,56,284-5 (ligaments of -) 55,284 (open passage between the uterus and nose) 56 (narrowness of the passage of -) 59,289 (opening of -) 269 (blood bursting forth from the neck of -) $285 \rightarrow$ electuary, foetus, itching, pill, powder, rupture, tumours, ulcers, vagina, veins, winds, woman
vagina 269,273 (direct channel between vagina, uterus and mouth) $49 \rightarrow$ pain
vapours (of the ingredients) $269 \rightarrow$ oils, womb
vein (rupture of a vein) 263 (rupture of the veins in the uterus or kidneys) $273 \rightarrow$ bleeding, venesection
veins 252 (of a castrate are like those of a woman) 25,241
(spermatic) 26 (warm and very wide) 250 (of the uterus) 262,269 (of the buttocks) $263,285 \rightarrow$ sensation
venesection 285 (of the saphenous vein) 43,264 (of the upper parts of the body) 45 (of the feet) $53,278 \rightarrow$ bleeding
Venus hair 289
vermicelli 272,282
vermin (bites of all deadly -) 276
vesicles (seminal) 33,250 (an affliction in these vesicles, comparable to a spasm) $251 \rightarrow$ power
vigour (sexual) $27,28 \rightarrow$ potency, power
vinegar 37,249,251-2,258,260-1,272-3,286,298-9,302-3,309310
violets $256,279,282$
vitriol 272
vulture $\rightarrow$ fat
walnut (preserves) 247
walnuts 246
warmth 242 (increases lust) 27,242 (warmth and moisture necessary for proper sexual vigour) $28,242 \rightarrow$ foodstuff, hair
watermelon $251,253,281$
water-mint 247,265-6,268,280,291-2,295
wax $257,280,301,303$ (white) 254,258 (yellow) 281
waybread $251,253,273,278,283$
weasel (anklebone of a live weasel) 61
wheat 257 (pounded and cooked) 243,280
wild-amaranth $248,251,282$
wind 303 (thick flatulent) 31,249 (inflating) 241,242 (in the nerves) 299 (coarse) $300 \rightarrow$ pill
winds (coarse) 52,277 (in the stomach or uterus) 58,287 (caused by cold) 246 (in the uterus) 267,279 (harsh) 276 (to expel the winds from the joints) $303 \rightarrow$ drugs, food, liniment, oils, pill
wine $37,60,244-5,247,251,256,258,269,273,275-6,281,283$, 287-9,300,307-8 (inspissated) 257,289
woman 262 (pregnant) 57 (pregnant young) 61,62 (with a disease or malfunction of the uterus) $61,62 \rightarrow$ body, foetus sperm, veins
womb (formed in the best possible way) 20 (displacement of -) 46 (vapours originating from the corrupted matter in -) $47 \rightarrow$ foetus
women (bodies of women are cold and moist) 40,262 (biological inferiority of -) 40 (pregnant) 42 (regimen good for pregnant women) 57,285-8 (expel the superfluities from their bodies by means of their periods) 67 (need when reaching sexual maturity the emission of sperm) 274 (gout does not happen to -) $305 \rightarrow$ diseases, foodstuffs, powder, suffocation, nosebleeds, urine
wool (burned) 275
wormwood 276
wound (cankering) 55,281
wounds $\rightarrow$ ulcers
yolk of eggs $\rightarrow$ egg
http://taylorandfrancis.com

## INDEX PROPER NAMES (ENGLISH)

Abraham Ben Isaac 10<br>Abū Ja‘far Aḥmad ibn Abī Khālid $\rightarrow$ Ibn al-Jazzār<br>Adams, F. 39,53-5,64-5<br>Aetius of Amida 31,36-7<br>Ahmad ibn Hanbal 51<br>Alexander of Tralles 33<br>Altmann, A. 5<br>Arberry, A. 14<br>Aristotle $9,19,24,27,40,47,242 \rightarrow$ Pseudo-Aristotle<br>Arnold of Villanova 50<br>Asín Palacios, M. 21

Berendes, J. 32,53,55-6,62,244,261,272,279,283,285,290-3 298,309
Bergsträsser, G. 43
Bernard de Gordon 40
de Biberstein Kazimirski, A. 33
al-Bīrūnī 273
Blumenfeld-Kosinski, R. 51-2,60
Bos, G. 7,21,297,303
Brockelmann, C. 5-6,15
Catahier, S. 7
Chérif, A. 5
Conrad, L. 3,9,14
Constantine the African 7,10,11,20-1,31
Daiber, H. 2,67-8
Daremberg, Ch. 9

Daremberg, Ch. and Ruelle, É. 9,29,263
De Lacy, Ph. 22,25-6
Diepgen, P. 46,51
Dietrich, A. 14,244,282,296
Dioscurides 18,32,38,53,55-6,60,62,244,261,272,279,283
285,290-2,297-8,309
Dols, M. 5
Dozy, R.P.A. 296
Dugat, G. 5,8,12
Fahd, T. 30
Filius, L. 20,26
Fleischer, H. 12
Förster, R. 30
Foucault, M. 19
Galen 9,17,19-22,24-7,31-3,35-7,40-9,53,57-8,66-7,241,249
$250,255,264-5,274,276,278,285-6,288,295-8,305 \rightarrow$ Pseudo-Galen
Garbers, K. 5
Gélis, G. 32,58,60,64
Golz, D. 271
Goss, Ch. 46
Green, M. 11,18,40-1,43-6,56,61-2
Güdemann, M. 10
Guy de Chauliac 60
al-Ḥabïb al-Hilah, Muḥammad 7
Haddād, Sāmī Ibrahīm 14
Hajji Khaliffah 6
Hamarneh, S.Kh. \& G. Sonnedecker 302
Haydar, G. 26
Helmreich, G, 19,22,24,29,32,40
Hett, W.S. 26,242
Hinz, W. 6,244,246,250,265,276,293,302
Hippocrates 9,43,45-6,48-50,56,63,66-7,305
Hubaysh 42-3
Hunayn ibn Isḥāq 21-2,29,42-3
Ibn Abbas, Judah ben Samuel
Ibn Abī Uṣaybi‘a 5,267
Ibn 'Idharī 6

Ibn al-Jazzār 1-2,5,8,10,14,15,17-20,22,24-8,30-50,52-8,60-7 239,303,305
Ibn Juljul 5,6
Ibn Khaldūn 50-1
Ibn Māsawayh 244,266
Ibn Sīnā 23-4,27-8,36-7,57,62,296
Ibn Tibbon, Moses 10
Idris, H.R. 5-6
Iflìmūn $\rightarrow$ Polemon
'İsā 308
'Īsā ibn Māssah 20
Ishāq 303
Ishạąq ibn 'Imrān 5,11,44,65,267,300
Isthāq b. Sulaymān al-Isrā’īli 5,37,256
Iṭhūrisfus $\rightarrow$ Xenocrates of Aphrodisias
Ithuurqas $\rightarrow$ Xenocrates of Aphrodisias
Jacquart, D. \& F. Micheau 5,7,10-11
Jacquart, D. \& Cl. Thomasset 8,20,22-4,26,34,48-50
John of Gaddesden 50
Jones, W.H.S. 45
Kahl, O. 38,260
Kamal, H. 245
al-Kindì 20,23-4,28,30,296
Kühn, C.G. 22,25-6,28,31-3,35-7,42-9,53-4,57-9,66-7,241
$250,255,274,276,278,286,288,298,305$
Lane, E.W. 33-4,294
Lehmann, H. 266
Levey, M. 265,271,273
Liddell, H.G. and R. Scott 34
Littré, É. 45-6,48,50,56,63,66,305
Lloyd, G.E.R. 40
Löw, I. 32
Maimonides 23
al-Majūsī 11,17,19-20,41,43-4,49-50,62
May, M.T. 19,22,24,40
Mohaghegh, M. 13
Montero Cartello, E. 20,31
Moschion 48-9

Muntner, S. 24
Musallam, B.F. 61-2,292
Narboni, Moshe 10
Nemesius of Emesa 11
Nickel, D. 46
Nilsson, M.P. 32
Nutton, V. 7
Oribasius $31,33,37,57$
Paul of Aegina 9,31,33,35-7,39-40,52-4,56-7,59,64-6,279,280
Pereira, R. 7-8
Peter of Spain 7
Philomenos 31
Pigeaud, J. 34
Pingree, D. 2
Polemon 9,21,30,248
Pseudo-Aristotle 24
Pseudo-Galen 58
Pseudo-Thābit ibn Qurra 20,24,28,33
Qaṭāba, Salmān 7
Qusṭā ibn Lūqā 1,26,28,31,297
Raven, W. 3
al-Rāzī 7,26,29,36,61,296-7
Reiske, J.J. 13
Riddle, J.M. 32,61-2
Rodnite Lemay, H. 40-1
Rosenthal, F. 51
Rufus of Ephesus 9,29,33,263-4
Säbūr [b. Sahl] 38,260,307
Schipperges, H. 10,20
Schmucker, W. 260,266,271,296
Sezgin, F. 5-7,13,15,61,244,267
Siegel, R.E. 22,26,32-3,42,46-8,58
Siggel, A. 271,296
Sommer, F. 14
Soranus 18,40-1,49,56,58,63-4,263
Steinschneider. M. 10.12

Suwaysī - al-Rāḍī 5,13-5
al-Suyūṭi 51
al-Tabarī 18,20,23-4,27,30,36-7,60,63-4,266
'Ubaydallāh al-Mahdī 6
Ullmann, M. 5-6,8-9,12,15,17-8,23,27,30,38,51,244,260,265
Uri, J. 12
Vajda, G. 14
Vesalius 24
Wack, M. 8,10
Wellmann, M. 32,53,55-6,62,244,261,272,279,283,285,290-3 298,309
Weisser, U. 21,23,26-7,40,51
Wenkebach, E. and F. Pfaff 43,265
Wiedemann, E. 271
Wilensky, M.L. 23
William of Saliceto 41
Xenocrates of Aphrodisias 61
Yuḥannā ibn Sarābiyūn 46
al-Zahrāwī1 51.302
http://taylorandfrancis.com

## BIBLIOGRAPHY

Adams, Francis, The seven books of Paulus Aegineta. Translated from the Greek with commentary embracing a complete view of the knowledge possessed by the Greeks, Romans, and Arabians on all subjects connected with medicine and surgery, 3 vols, London, 1844-7.
Aetius: Aetii Amideni Libri Medicinales I-VIII, ed. Alexander Olivieri (Corpus Medicorum Graecorum VIII), 2 vols., Leipzig-Berlin 1935-1950.

Alexander of Tralles: Alexander von Tralles, Original-Text und Übersetzung nebst einer einleitenden Abhandlung. Ein Beitrag zur Geschichte der Medizin. Von Theodor Puschmann, 2 vols., Vienna 1878-1879.

Arberry, Arthur J., The Chester Beatty Library, A handlist of the Arabic manuscripts, vols. I-VII, Oxford-London 19551964; VIII (Indices) by Ursula Lyons, 1966.

Aristotle, Ethica Nicomachea, ed. by I. Bywater, Oxford 1894.
Idem, Generation of animals, with an English translation by A.L. Peck, Cambridge/Mass.-London 1979.

Asín Palacios, M., "Noticia de los Mss. árabes del Sacromonte de Granada," Revista del Centro de Estudios Históricos de Granada y su Reino, 1 (1911), vol. 1, 249-278.
de Biberstein Kazimirski, A., Dictionnaire Arabe-Français conte-nant toutes les racines de la langue arabe. New edition, 2 vols., Paris 1960.
al-Bīrūnī, K. al-Saydana fī al-tibb. Edited with an English translation by Hakim Mohammed Said, 2 vols., Karachi 1973.

Blumenfeld-Kosinski, Renate, Not of a Woman Born. Representations of Caesarean Birth in Medieval and Renaissance Culture, Ithaca and London 1990.

Bos, G., Qusṭā Ibn Lūqā's Medical Regime for the Pilgrims to Mecca. The Risāla fî tadbīr safar al-hajjj, Leiden 1992.
Idem, "Ibn al-Jazzār on women's diseases," Medical History, 37,3, 1993: 296-312.

Idem, Ibn al-Jazzār on Forgetfulness and its Treatment. The Risāla fī al-nisyān wa-'ilājihi. Critical edition with English translation, London 1995.

Idem, "Ibn al-Jazzār on sexuality and sexual disfunction and the mystery of 'Ubaid Ibn 'Al̄̄ Ibn Jurāja Ibn Ḥillauf solved," Jerusalem Studies in Arabic and Islam, vol. 19 (Jubilee Volume Pesah Shinar), 1995: 250-266.
Idem, "R. Moshe Narboni, Philosopher and physician: A critical analysis of Sefer Orah Hayyim," Medieval Encounters, vol.2.1.1995: 219-251.

Brockelmann, Carl, Geschichte der arabischen Literatur. 2., den Supplementbänden angepasste Auflage. Bd. 1, 2. (and) Supp. Bd. 1-3, Leiden 1937-1949.
Chérif, A., Histoire de la médecine arabe en Tunisie (Diss.), Bordeaux 1908.
Constantinus Africanus, De Coitu: Montero Cartello, E., Constantini Liber De Coitu. El tratado de Andrologia de Constantino el Africano. Estudio y edicion critica, Santiago de Compostela 1983.
Daremberg, Ch., "Recherches sur un ouvrage qui a pour titre Zad al-Mouçafir, en arabe, Ephodes en grec, Viatique en latin, et qui est attribué, dans les textes arabes et grecs, à Abou Djafar, et, dans le texte latin, à Constantin," Archives des missions scientifiques et littéraires, choix de rapports et instructions II, 1851: 490-527.
Idem, "Extraits inédits des Éphodes, d'Abu Djafar, traduits en Grec au x ${ }^{\mathrm{e}}$ siècle," Oeuvres de Rufus d'Ephèse, ed. Ch. Daremberg-É. Ruelle, Paris 1879: 582-596.
Daremberg, Ch., and Ruelle, É., Oeuvres de Rufus d'Éphèse, texte collationné sur les manuscrits, traduit pour la première fois en français, avec une introduction, Paris 1879.
Diepgen, Paul, Frau und Frauenheilkunde in der Kultur des Mittelalters, Stuttgart 1963.
Dietrich, A., Zum Drogenhandel im Islamischen Ägypten, Heidelberg 1954.
Idem, Medicinalia Arabica. Studien über arabische medizinische Handschriften in türkischen und syrischen Bibliotheken (Abhandlungen der Akademie der

Wissenschaften in Göttingen, Philologisch-Historische Klasse, Dritte Folge, Nr. 66), Göttingen 1966.
Idem, Dioscurides Triumphans. Ein anonymer arabischer Kommentar (Ende 12. Jahr. n. Chr.) zur Materia medica. Arabischer Text nebst kommentierter deutscher Übersetzung hrsg. (Abh. der Akad. der Wiss. in Göttingen, Phil. Hist. Klasse, Dritte Folge, Nr. 172). I-II, Göttingen 1988.
Dioscurides/Berendes: Des Pedanios Dioskurides aus Anazarbos Arzneimittellehre in fünf Büchern. Übersetzt und mit Erklärungen versehen von J. Berendes, Stuttgart 1902, repr. Wiesbaden 1970.
Dioscurides/Wellmann: Pedanii Dioscuridis Anazarbei De Materia Medica Libri Quinque, ed. M. Wellmann, 5 books in 3 vols., repr. in 1 vol. Berlin 1958.
Dols, Michael W., Medieval Islamic Medicine. Ibn Ridwān's Treatise "On the Prevention of Bodily Ills in Egypt," Berkeley-Los Angeles-London 1984.
Dozy, R.P.A., Supplément aux Dictionnaires arabes. Deuxième édition. I-II, Leiden 1927.
Dugat, G., "Études sur le traité de médecine d’Abou Dja‘far Aḥmad, intitulé: Zad al-moçafir. La provision du voyageur," Journal Asiatique 5 (1853): 289-353.
E.I. ${ }^{2}$ : The Encyclopaedia of Islam, new ed., Leiden and London 1960ff.
Fahd, T., La divination arabe. Études religieuses, sociologiques et folkloriques sur le milieu natif de l'Islam, Paris 1987.

Fleischer, H.L., Catalogus codicum manuscriptorum orientalium in Bibliothecae Regiae Dresdensis, Leipzig 1831.

Förster, R., Scriptores Physiognomonici Graeci et Latini. I-II, Leipzig 1893.
Foucault, M., L'usage des plaisirs (Histoire de la sexualité 2), Paris 1984.
Galen, Kühn: Kühn, C.G., Claudii Galeni Opera Omnia, 20 vols., Leipzig 1821-1833, repr. Hildesheim 1967.
Idem, De usu partium, ed. G. Helmreich, 2 vols., Leipzig 19071909.

Idem, De alimentorum facultatibus, ed. G. Helmreich, Corpus Medicorum Graecorum V4,2, Leipzig and Berlin 1923.
Idem, In Hippocratis Epidemiorum Commentarius; eds. E. Wenkebach and F. Pfaff (Galeni in Hippocratis Epidemiarum Libros) I-III, VI, Comm I-VIII, Indices; Corpus Medicorum Graecorum V,10,1; V,10,2,1; V,10,2,2; V,10,2,4, Berlin 1934-1956.
Idem, Über die Anatomie der Gebärmutter. Herausgegeben, übersetzt und erläutert von Diethard Nickel (Corpus Medicorum Graecorum V2,1), Berlin 1971.
Idem, On semen. Edition, translation and commentary by Phillip De Lacy (Corpus Medicorum Graecorum V3,1), Berlin 1992.
Gélis, Jacques, History of childbirth, Fertility, Pregnancy and Birth in Early Modern Europe, translated by Rosemary Morris, Cambridge 1991.

Goltz, D., Studien zur Geschichte der Mineralnamen in Pharma-zie, Chemie und Medizin von den Anfängen bis Paracelsus, Wiesbaden 1972.
Green, Monica H., The transmission of ancient theories of female physiology and disease through the early Middle Ages (Ph.D.), Princeton University 1985.
Idem, "Constantinus Africanus and the Conflict between Religion and Science," The Human Embryo. Aristotle and the Arabic and European Traditions. Edited by G.R. Dunstan, Exeter 1990: 47-69.
Güdemann, Moritz, Das jüdische Unterrichtswesen während der spanisch-arabischen Periode, Vienna 1873.
Hamarneh, Sami Khalaf \& Glenn Sonnedecker, A pharmaceutical view of Abulcasis al-Zahrāwī in Moorish Spain with special reference to the "Adhān", Leiden 1963.
Hinz, Walther, Islamische Masse und Gewichte umgerechnet ins metrische System (Handbuch der Orientalistik I, Ergänzungs-band I, 1). Photomechanischer Nachdruck mit Zusätzen und Berichtigungen, Leiden/Köln 1970.
Hippocrates, Littré: Hippocrates, Oeuvres complètes d'Hippocrate. Traduction nouvelle avec le texte grec en regard...par É. Littré, 10 vols, Paris 1839-1861, repr. Amsterdam 19731989.

Hippocrates, Jones: W.H.S. Jones, Hippocrates with an English translation, vol. 4 (Loeb Classical Library), Cambridge/Mass. -London 1931, repr. 1979.
Hunayn ibn Isḥāq, Bergsträsser: Hunain ibn Ishāq über die syrischen und arabischen Galen-Übersetzungen. Zum ersten

Mal herausgegeben und übersetzt von G. Bergsträsser (Abhandlungen für die Kunde des Morgenlandes VII, 2), Leipzig 1925.
Ibn Abī Uṣaybi‘a, 'Uyūn al-anbā' fí ṭabaqāt al-aṭibbā', Beirut n.d.

Ibn al-Jazzār, K. siyāsati al-ṣibyān wa-tadbīrihim, ed. Muḥammad al-Ḥabīb al-Hīlah, Tunis 1968.
Idem, K. fí al-mi'da wa-amrādihā wa-mudāwātihā, ed. Salmān Qaṭāba, Baghdad 1980.
Ibn Juljul, Țabaqāt al-aṭibbā' wa al-hukamā', ed. by F. Sayyid, Cairo 1955.
Ibn Khaldūn, The Muqaddimah. An Introduction to History. Translated from the Arabic by Franz Rosenthal, 3 vols., New York 1958.
Ibn Sīnā, K. al-qānūn fī al-ṭibb, 5 books in 3 vols., repr. Beirut n.d.
‘Īsā ibn Māssah, Masā'il fì al-nasl wa al-dhurrīya wa al-jimā', Streitfragen über die Zeugung, Nachkommenschaft und über den Geschlechtsverkehr. Edition, Übersetzung und Bear-beitung des arabischen Textes auf der Grundlage der Hand-schrift Ayasofya 3724. Inaugural-Dissertation vorgelegt von Mohamed Walid Anbari, Erlangen-Nürnberg 1971.
Isḥāq ibn 'Imrān, Maqāla fì al-mālankhūlı̄ya, ed. Karl Garbers, Hamburg 1977.
Iskandar, A.Z., A Catalogue of Arabic Manuscripts on Medicine and Science in the Wellcome Historical Medical Library, London 1967.

Jacquart, Danielle \& Françoise Micheau, La médecine arabe et l'occident médiéval, Paris 1990.
Jacquart, Danielle \& Thomasset, Claude, Sexuality and Medicine in the Middle Ages, Cambridge 1988.

Kahl, Oliver, Sābūr ibn Sahl's Dispensatorium parvum (alAqrābādhīn al-ṣaghīr) (Doct. thesis), Manchester 1992 (forthcoming edition Brill, Leiden, JPTS).
Kamal, Hassan, Encyclopaedia of Islamic Medicine, Cairo 1975.
al-Kindī, $K$. al-bāh, ed. Celentano, G., "Due scritti medici di alKindī," Istituto Orientale di Napoli, Supplemento n. 18 agli Annali, vol. 39 (1979), fasc. 1, 11-35.
Lane, E.W., Arabic-English Lexicon, I, 1-8, London 18631879.

Lehmann, H., "Thābit ibn Qurra fí 'ilm al-ṭibb," Orientalische Literaturzeitung, 11 (1929): 869-873.
Levey, M., The Medical Formulary or Aqrābādhin of al-Kindī. Translated with a study of its materia medica, Madison, Milwaukee and London 1966.
Liddell \& Scott: A Greek English Lexicon. Compiled by H.G. Liddell and R. Scott. Revised and augmented throughout by H.S. Jones a.o. With a supplement 1968, repr. Oxford 1989. Lloyd, G.E.R., Science, Folklore and Ideology. Studies in the Life Sciences in Ancient Greece, Cambridge 1983.
Löw, Immanuel, Aramäische Pflanzennamen, Leipzig 1881.
al-Majūsī, 'Alī Ibn al-‘Abbās al-Majūsī, Kāmil al-sinā'a alțibbīya, repr. from MS A.Y. 6375 Istanbul University Library (Publ. of the Inst. for the Hist. of Arab. Isl. Science,
ed. by F. Sezgin, Series C: Facs. Editions, Vol. 16, 1-3), Frankfurt am Main 1985.

Maimonides, Wilensky, M.L., "Hanhagat ha-Beri'ut ba-Mishgal. Health Conduct in Intercourse Taken from Rabbi Moshe Maimon," Proceedings of the American Academy for Jewish Research LVI (1990): 101-113.
May, Margaret Tallmadge, Galen on the Usefulness of the Parts of the Body. Translated from the Greek with an Introduction and Commentary, 2 vols., New York 1968.
Mehren, A., Codices Orientales Bibliothecae Regiae Hafniensis enumerati et descripti. Pars altera: Codices Hebraicos et Arabicos continens, Copenhagen 1856.
Musallam, B.F., Sex and society in Islam, Cambridge 1983.
Nilsson, Martin P., Geschichte der Griechischen Religion. I: Bis zur griechischen Weltherrschaft (Handbuch der Altertums-wissenschaft, V2, 1), München 1941.
Oribasius, Synopsis ad Eustathium, Libri ad Eunapium, ed. I. Raeder (Corpus Medicorum Graecorum VI,3), Leipzig-Berlin 1926.

Paul of Aegina: Paulus Aegineta, Opera, ed. I.L. Heiberg, I-II (Corpus Medicorum Graecorum IX), Leipzig-Berlin 19211924.

Pigeaud, J., "Le rève érotique dans l'Antiquité gréco-romain: l'oneirognos," Littérature, Médecine, Société, 3 (1981): 1023.

Plato, The Dialogues of Plato, transl. into English by B. Jowett, 2 vols.. New York 1937.

Pseudo-Aristotle, Problems, with an English translation by W.S. Hett, Cambridge/Mass. 1970-1983.
Idem, Problemata Physica Arabica: Filius, L., Problemata Physica Arabica toegeschreven aan Aristoteles, een kritische teksteditie van de Arabische vertaling van Hunayn Ibn Ishāq en de Hebreeuwse vertaling van Moše Ibn Tibbon (Doct. Diss.), 2 vols., Culemborg 1989.
Pseudo-Maimonides, Ma'amar al Razei ha-Hayyim haMiniyyim, ed. S. Muntner, in: Al ha-Hayyim ha-Miniyyim, Sexual Life (Hygiene and its Medical Treatment), Collection of Mediaeval Treatises, Jerusalem 1965: 17-43.
Pseudo-Thābit Ibn Qurra, K. al-dhakhīra fí 'ilm al-ṭibb, ed. G. Sobhy, Cairo 1928.
Qusṭā Ibn Lūqā, Kitāb fì al-bāh wa mā yuhtāju ilayhi min tadbīr al-badan fī istimā'lihi, ed. G. Haydar (Inaugural-Disser-tation), Erlangen-Nürnberg 1973.
al-Rāzī, K. al-ḥawı̄ fì al-ṭibb, vols. 1-23, Hyderabad 19521974.

Riddle, John M., Contraception and Abortion from the Ancient World to the Renaissance, Cambridge, Mass.-London 1992.
Rodnite Lemay, Helen, Women's Secrets. A Translation of Pseudo-Albertus Magnus' De Secretis Mulierum with Commentaries, New York 1992.
Rufus of Ephesus: See Daremberg-Ruelle.
Schipperges, Heinrich, Die arabische Medizin im lateinischen Mittelalter (Sitzungsberichte der Heidelberger Akad. der Wiss., Math. naturw. Klasse, Jahrg. 1976, 2. Abh.), Berlin/Heidelberg/New York 1976.

Idem, Die Assimilation der arabischen Medizin durch das Lateinische Mittelalter (Sudhoffs Archiv, Beiheft 3), Wiesbaden 1964.
Schmucker, W., Die pflanzliche und mineralische Materia Medica im Firdaus al-ḥikma des 'Alī ibn Sahl Rabban atȚabarí (Inaugural-Dissertation), Bonn 1969.
Sezgin, Fuat, Geschichte des arabischen Schrifttums, Band III:
Medizin - Pharmazie - Zoologie - Tierheilkunde bis ca. 430 H., Leiden 1970.

Siegel, Rudolph E., Galen's System of Physiology and Medicine, Basel 1968.
Idem, Galen on the Affected Parts, Basel 1976.
Siggel, A., Das Buch der Gifte des Jābir ibn Hayyān, übersetzt und erläutert, Wiesbaden 1958.
Sommer, F.E. (and Dorothy M. Schullian), A catalogue of Incunabula and MSS in the Army Medical Library, New York 1950.
Soranus, Gynecology, translated with an introduction by Owsei Temkin, with the assistance of N.J. Eastman, L. Edelstein and A.F. Guttmacher, Baltimore 1956.

Steinschneider, Moritz, Die hebräischen Handschriften in Berlin, Berlin 1878.
Idem, Die hebräischen Übersetzungen des Mittelalters und die Juden als Dolmetscher, Berlin 1893, repr. Graz 1956.
Idem, "Schriften der Araber in hebräischen Handschriften, ein
Beitrag zur arabischen Bibliographie," ZDMG 47 (1893):
335-384.

Idem, Die hebräischen Handschriften der K. Hof- und Staatsbibliothek in München, 2nd rev. enl. ed., Munich 1895.
Suwaysī - al-Rāḍ̄̄ (eds.), Zād al-musāfir wa-qūt al-hāḍir (bks. 1-3), Tunis, al-dār al-'arabīya li-l-kitāba, 1986.
al-Ṭabarī, Firdaws al-hikma, ed. by M.Z. Siddiqi, Berlin 1928.
Ullmann, Manfred, Die Medizin im Islam (Handbuch der Orien-talistik I, Ergänzungsband VI, 1), Leiden/Köln 1970.
Idem, Die Natur- und Geheimwissenschaften im Islam (Handbuch der Orientalistik I, Ergänzungsband VI, 2), Leiden 1972. Idem, "Neues zu den diätetischen Schriften des Rufus von Ephesos", Medizinhistorisches Journal IX, 1974: 23-40.

Idem, Islamic medicine, Edinburgh 1978.
Uri, J., Bibliothecae Bodleianae codicum orientalium, videlicet Hebraicorum, Chaldaicorum, Syriacorum, Aethiopicorum, Arabicorum, Turcicorum, Copticorumque catalogus, vol. 1, Oxford 1787.
Vajda, G., Index général des manuscrits arabes musulmans de la Bibliothèque Nationale de Paris, Paris 1953.
Veith, Ilza, Hysteria: the History of a Disease, Chicago 1965.
Wack, Mary, Lovesickness in the Middle Ages. The Viaticum and its commentaries, Philadelphia 1990.

Weisser, Ursula, Zeugung, Vererbung und pränatale Entwicklung in der Medizin des arabisch-islamischen Mittelalters, Erlangen 1983.
Wiedemann, Eilhard, Gesammelte Schriften zur Arabisch-Islamischen Wissenschaftsgeschichte. Gesammelt und bearbeitet von Dorothea Girke und Dieter Bischoff (Veröffentlichungen des Institutes für Geschichte der Arabisch-Islamischen

Wissenschaften. Hrsg. v. Fuat Sezgin), 3 vols., Frankfurt am Main 1984.
al-Zahrāwī: Abulcasis On Surgery and Instruments. A definitive edition of the Arabic text with English translation and commentary by M.S. Spink and G.L. Lewis, London 1973.


[^0]:    ${ }^{1}$ On his biographical data and works see Ibn Juljul, Țabaqāt al-aṭibba', 8891; Ibn Abi Uṣaybi‘a, 'Uyün al-anbā', 481-2; Brockelmann, GAL I, 238, Suppl. I, 424; Chérif, La médecine arabe en Tunisie, 53-70; Ullmann, Die Medizin im Islam, 147-9; idem, Natur- und Geheimwissenschaften, 25, n. 5; Sezgin, GAS III, 304-7; E.I. ${ }^{2}$ III, 754 s.v. "Ibn al-Djazzar" (H.R.Idris); Dols, Medieval Islamic Medicine, 67-9; Suwaysi-al-Rạdi (eds.), Zād almusāfir, 7-24; Dugat, "Études sur le traité de médecine d'Abou Dja'far Aḥmad, intitulé: Zad al-Moçafir."
    ${ }^{2}$ See E.I. ${ }^{2}$, IV, 111-2, s.v. "Ishāk ibn Sulaymãn al-Isrā’ilı" (A. Altmann). As a physician he became famous in the Latin west through translations into Latin of his K. al-hummayat (On fevers) and K. al-bawl (On urine). See Jacquart-Micheau, La médecine arabe et l'occident médiéval, 111.
    ${ }^{3}$ See Ullmann, Die Medizin im Islam, 125-6. Ishạq ibn 'Imrān is famous for his work on melancholy, entitled Maqala fíl-mälankhül̄̆ya, ed. Garbers.

[^1]:    ${ }^{4}$ Much confusion surrounds the year of his death; Hajji Khalifah (Kashf al-zunūn II, 318) mentions three dates, namely, 1. before the year 400/1010, 2. the year $400 / 1010$ itself, and 3. after this year. Brockelmann (GI, 238), without stating why, specifies it as the year 395/1004. Other scholars like Idris have adopted this date as well. Ibn Juljul refers in his $K$. Ṭabaqāt alațibba', 90 , which he composed in the year 987, to the death of Ibn al-Jazzăr. This means that he must have died before 987. Ibn 'Idharl mentions in his $K$. al-bayän al-mughrib I, 237, the date 369/979-980 as the year of his death. Ullmann (Natur- und Geheimwissenschaften, 25, n. 5) and Sezgin (op. cit., 304) give this date as the correct one. Suwaysi-al-Radi, op. cit., 9-11, surmise that Ibn al-Jazzar died shortly before the year 360/971. I have adopted Ullmann's opinion.
    ${ }^{5}$ One qinṭarr was 45 kilos; cf. Hinz, Islamische Masse und Gewichte, 24-5.

[^2]:    ${ }^{6}$ For a complete survey of his writings see especially Sezgin, op. cit., 304-7. It should be noted that some of these works have been published, namely, 1. K. siyasat al-sibyan wa-tadbirihim (On the education and regimen of children); Ed. by Muhammad al-Habib al-Hilah, Tunis 1968; 2. K. fî lmi'da wa-amrạdiha wa-mudāwātihā (On the stomach, its diseases and treatment); Ed. by Salmān Qaṭāba, Baghdad 1980; 3. Risāla fi l-nisyān wa'ilajihi (On forgetfulness and its treatment); See my Ibn al-Jazzar on Forgetfulness and its Treatment (Royal Asiatic Society).
    ${ }^{7}$ Ed. S. Catahier; cf. Jacquart-Micheau, La médecine arabe, 113, n. 69. Despite all my efforts I have not been able to obtain a copy of this edition; I will therefore, when referring to this work, quote from manuscripts Paris and Gotha.

    8 Al-Răzı composed, according to Ibn Abı Ușaybi'a, op. cit., 427, a monograph entitled Tibb al-fuqarä' (cf. Sezgin, op. cit., 294). The monograph ascribed to Galen on the same subject, which is only preserved in an Arabic translation under the title K. 'Ilaj al-masākin wa-fibb al-fuqara' (Ullmann, op. cit., 59), is, as Professor Vivian Nutton informed me, certainly not from his hand.
    ${ }^{9}$ Peter of Spain (13th cent.), doctor and philosopher, who became pope under the name John XXI, composed a Thesaurus pauperum (ed. Rocha

[^3]:    Pereira in: Obras Médicas de Pedro Hispano, 235-71); cf. Jacquart-Thomasset, Sexuality and Medicine in the Middle Ages, 91; Wack, Lovesickness in the Middle Ages, 84.

    10 See Ullmann, "Neues zu den diätetischen Schriften des Rufus von Ephesos," 38: "Der Titel von Ibn al-Jazzar's Buch: Zad al-musafir...ist dagegen reine Rhetorik, eine figura per merismum, die nichts anderes besagt, als dass das Buch für jedermann gedacht ist." For a survey of the contents of the different books of Zad al-musafir based on MS Dresden, see Dugat, op. cit., 220-34.
    ${ }^{11}$ MS Paris 3038.

[^4]:    12 Arabic: "li-maji" al-ṭibb man qad yatamahhar".
    ${ }^{13}$ Cf. note 11. I thank Dr Conrad for his help in the translation of this text.

    14 See Daremberg, Recherches; "Extraits inédits des Éphodes, d'Abu Djafar, traduits en Grec au x ${ }^{\mathrm{e}}$ siècle," Oeuvres de Rufus d'Ephèse, ed. Daremberg-Ruelle, 582-96; cf. Ullmann, op. cit., 148, n.3.

[^5]:    ${ }^{15}$ See Steinschneider, Die hebräischen Übersetzungen, 703-5.
    16 Fol. 26a: "I have looked into this book and concluded that it is very honorable. It contains many different remedies and was composed by the scholar physician Maistre Vidal BALGWM (= Moshe Narboni) from other works, such as Sefer Zedat ha-Derakhim and the like;" for Narboni's medical compendium see my "R. Moshe Narboni, Philosopher and physician: A critical analysis of Sefer Orah Hayyim" (Medieval Encounters).

    For MS Munich 243 see Steinschneider, Die hebräischen Handschriften der K. Hof- und Staatsbibliothek in München.
    ${ }^{17}$ Cf. Güdemann, Das jüdische Unterrichtswesen während der spanischarabischen Periode, 151.
    ${ }^{18}$ See Schipperges, Arabische Medizin, 106-8; idem, Die Assimilation der arabischen Medizin, 40-3; Jacquart-Micheau, op. cit., 115-18. Wack, op. cit., deals especially with Ibn al-Jazzar's treatise on 'ish $q$ (passionate love), Constantine's Latin translation and its commentaries.

[^6]:    ${ }^{19}$ See Jacquart-Micheau, op. cit., 116-17.
    20 This has been shown convincingly by Monica H. Green in her pioneering study The transmission of ancient theories of female physiology and disease through the early Middle Ages, 278-90.

[^7]:    ${ }^{21}$ See Steinschneider, Die hebräischen Handschriften in Berlin, 104, no. 252; idem, Schriften der araber in hebräischen Handschriften, 346; Ullmann, op. cit., 147, n. 6.

    22 See Fleischer, Catalogus codicum manuscriptorum orientalium in Bibliothecae Regiae Dresdensis, 31-2; Dugat, Études, 293-4; according to Dugat (op. cit., 293) the copying of this MS was completed in the year 1009/1600.

    23 See Uri, Bibliothecae Bodleianae codicum manuscriptorum orientalium...catalogus, vol. 1, 133, no. 559.

[^8]:    ${ }^{24}$ Cf. Sezgin, op. cit., 305. I thank professor Mohaghegh for providing me with a photostat of this MS. Suwaysī-al-Radī, op. cit., 23, do not mention this MS.

[^9]:    25 See Vajda, Index général des manuscrits arabes musulmans, 729. Sezgin, op. cit., 305, refers to the fact that it is a copy of Dresden.
    ${ }^{26}$ Dr Conrad is preparing a catalogue describing all the MSS from this collection acquired by the Wellcome Institute for the History of Medicine.
    ${ }^{27}$ Suwaysı-al-Radi, op. cit., 23, state that this MS is very fragmentary, so that they did not use it for their edition.

    28 See Dietrich, Medicinalia Arabica, 63-4. Professor Sezgin informed me that he is preparing a facsimile edition of this manuscript.

    29 See Arberry, The Chester Beatty Library, A handlist of the Arabic manuscripts, vol. 7, 71; Sommer, A catalogue of Incunabula and MSS in the

[^10]:    Army Medical Library, Part 2: Oriental MSS, 329; Brockelmann, GAL I, 238; Ullmann, op. cit., 147; Sezgin, op. cit., 305.
    ${ }^{30}$ See note 11 .
    ${ }^{31}$ See note 1 .

[^11]:    32 I am deeply indebted to Professor David Pingree for his detailed elucidation of this point.

    33 The question of the extent to which the translations into Greek, Hebrew and Latin could assist in this task is equally vexed. No scientific research on the Greek tradition has been done, the Hebrew tradition consists of MSS representing three different translations, and Constantine's Latin rendering is a paraphrase for which, again, the state of the textual tradition is unknown.

[^12]:    34 Ullmann, op. cit., 86.
    35 Ullmann. Islamic Medicine. 14.

[^13]:    ${ }^{36}$ See Ullmann, Medizin, 76-8.
    37 See Green, op. cit., 112. She argues with regard to al-Majosi's therapy for menstrual retention that it "demonstrates how far the Arabic physicians had surpassed the ancients in the realm of pharmacology - with regard both to the number of medicaments employed and to the sophistication of their preparation."

[^14]:    ${ }^{38}$ De usu partium XIV, 2; ed. Helmreich II, 285, 1. 27-286, 1. 12; transl. May II, 621-2.
    ${ }^{39}$ Generation of animals II, 1, 731b; cf. Foucault, L'usage des plaisirs, 58.
    ${ }^{40}$ Ethica Nicomachea VII, 4, 2, 1147b; cf. Foucault. ibid.

[^15]:    ${ }^{41}$ Kämil al-sinäa ${ }^{\text {a }}$, MS Ayasofya 6375, Facs. ed. Frankfurt a. M. 1985, vol. 1, 243. This statement introduces the chapter entitled "On coitus" ( $F \bar{\imath}$ fi'lal-jima')
    ${ }^{42}$ Cf. Problemata Physica Arabica, ed. and transl. Filius, V, 15; 'Isa ibn Massah, Masa'il fí al-nasl, 22.
    ${ }^{43}$ See, for instance, al-Kindı, K. al-bah, 21; al-Țabarı, Firdaws al-hikma, 265; Pseudo-Thābit ibn Qurra, K. al-dhakhira, ch. 31.

    44 Jacquart-Thomasset, op. cit., 33.
    45 Cf. Jacquart-Thomasset, op. cit., 22; Schipperges, Assimilation, 34-5. Jacquart-Thomasset also refer to the fundamental role played by Constantine's De Coitu which, whether an independent treatise or an enlarged adaptation of the Zäd al-musafir, has certainly derived most of its information from this last work. I thank Dr. Enrique Montero Cartello for providing me with a copy of his critical edition of this work.

[^16]:    ${ }^{46}$ De usu partium XIV, 3,4; tr. May 622, 626; cf. Weisser, Zeugung, 80.
    47 K. al-bah wa anwa'ihi. It is well possible that this treatise, which only survives in an unedited Arabic translation, was an important source for later authors stressing the same element; cf. al-Kindi, op. cit., 13-14, esp. n. 37; Asín Palacios, Noticia, 261.

    48 See Weisser, op. cit., 41. Ibn al-Jazzar's familiarity with the De usu partium also appears from his Risala fi al-nisyan wa-'ilajihi. This treatise contains a description of the three or four ventricles of the brain which is very similar to that of Galen in his De usu partium. See my edition of this treatise based on MS Lisbon V292a (fols. 56r-58r) and two Hebrew translations (note 6 above).

[^17]:    49 See Sezgin, op. cit., 113; Ullmann, op. cit., 41; De Lacy (ed.), Galen on semen, 14-16.
    ${ }^{50}$ Cf. Jacquart-Thomasset, op. cit., 82-3.
    ${ }^{51}$ De usu partium XV,2; ed. Helmreich II, 344, 1. 1; transl. May, 659.
    52 Galen, De locis affectis VI (Kühn VIII, 441, 447-9; transl. Siegel, 193, 195-6).

[^18]:    ${ }^{53}$ See next quotation.
    ${ }^{54}$ Cf. Ullmann, Islamic medicine, 62.
    55 Ibn Sinā, K. al-Qānūn fĭ al-țibb, bk. 3, Fann 20, Maq. 1 (p. 532, 1. 2).
    56 Cf. Jacquart-Thomasset, op. cit., 79. Ibn al-Jazzăr, and not Ibn Sinā, is therefore the earliest known example of this ambiguity.

    57 Cf. Plato, Timaeus 73b-d; Weisser, op. cit., 100ff; Jacquart-Thomasset, op. cit., 52-6.

    58 Al-Kindi, op. cit., I, l. 13.
    59 Al-Tabarı, op. cit., 266, 1. 3.

[^19]:    ${ }^{60}$ Ed. by M.L. Wilensky, 108.
    ${ }^{61}$ Ed. Muntner, 27, ch. 1, 1: "Lehah zo (ha-Zera') Mithawwah ba-Guf biKhlalo."
    ${ }^{62}$ Cf. Aristotle, Generation of Animals 725a.
    ${ }^{63}$ Cf. Jacquart-Thomasset, op. cit., 54.
    ${ }^{64}$ K. al-dhakhïra, 181: "al-manij alladhi huwa al-dam al-nadij."
    65 Op. cit., 266.
    ${ }^{66}$ Op. cit., I, 1. 15.
    67 Op. cit., bk. 3, Fann 20, Maqala 1 (p. 532, 1. 29).
    68 De usu partium XIV, 6; ed. Helmreich II, 301 transl. May 631-2.
    ${ }^{69}$ Cf. Jacquart-Thomasset, op. cit., 36, 50.

[^20]:    $7_{0}$ De semine I, 15 (De Lacy, 124; Kühn, IV, 572).
    ${ }^{71}$ On semen, translation De Lacy, 125.

[^21]:    72 Problemata Physica Arabica, V, 19. For similar statements by Arab physicians cf. al-Razı, K. al-hawī X, 29; Qusṭa ibn Laqã, Kitāb fı al-bah, ed. G. Haydar, 37.
    ${ }^{73}$ Problemata Physica Arabica, V, 28; cf. Greek text ed. and transl. by Hett, X, 24: "Why are hairy men and thick-feathered birds lustful? Is it because they are naturally hot and moist, and both these qualities are necessary to intercourse?"
    ${ }^{74}$ De arte medica V (Kühn I, 319).
    75 De semine I, 12-16 (Kühn IV, 555-589; De Lacy, 106-40); cf. JacquartThomasset, op. cit., 54.
    ${ }^{76}$ Generation of Animals, 717a12-717b13.

[^22]:    77 Cf. Siegel, Galen's System of Physiology, 224-230; JacquartThomasset, op. cit., 54; Weisser, op. cit., 112: "Auf die Beteiligung der Testes bei der Samenbereitung legt er besonderes Gewicht ...im Rahmen seiner Kritik an Aristoteles."
    ${ }^{78}$ Firdaws al-hikma, 265, 1. 20.
    ${ }^{79}$ K. al-qānän, bk. 3, Fann 20, Maqāla 1 (p. 532, 1. 1).
    ${ }^{80}$ See Ullmann, Islamic medicine, 57-8; Weisser, op. cit., 72-4.

[^23]:    ${ }^{81}$ De arte medica XIII (Kühn I, 339-40).
    82 Op. cit., 13-22 (ch. 2): "Fi mizajji l-unthayayni wa-l-dala'ili allati yu'rafu bihă kullu wâhidin min mizajihă." For similar symptoms see Ibn Sinā, op. cit., Fann 20, Maqāla 1 (p. 534): "Faṣlun fị dală’ili amzijati a‘dă’i l-maniyi l-ṭabi'iyati."

[^24]:    ${ }^{83}$ Cf. al-Kindı, op. cit., IV, ll. 12-13; Pseudo-Thābit, op. cit., 182, 1. 9.
    ${ }^{84}$ K. al-hāwi, X, 296-7.
    ${ }^{85}$ Chickpeas are already recommended by Rufus of Ephesus (DarembergRuelle, op. cit., 322) and Galen (De alimentorum facultatibus I, 22, ed. Helmreich, 248-9); It also features in the Arabic treatises on coitus mentioned before.

[^25]:    86 This reading is according to MSS Oxford, Berlin, and Teheran. MS Dresden reads "ghamz thadan."
    ${ }^{87}$ Cf. ed. Hoffmann in Förster: Scriptores Physiognomici Graeci et Latini I-II; Fahd, La divination arabe, 384-6; Ullmann, Medizin, 96.

[^26]:    ${ }^{88}$ Cf. Liber de coitu, ed. Montero Cartello, ch. 16 (p. 160), 1. 12.
    89 Galen, De comp. med. sec. loc. IX 9 (Kühn XIII, 318); Oribasius, Synopsis, IX, 39; Aetius of Amida, Tetrabiblon, XI, 32; Paul of Aegina, Opera, III, 57; cf. Qusṭa ibn Laqa, op. cit., 32, citing Galen explicitly.
    ${ }^{90}$ Galen, ibid; Oribasius, ibid. ; Aetius of Amida, ibid.; Paul of Aegina, ibid; cf. Qusța, ibid.

[^27]:    ${ }^{91}$ Galen, ibid.
    92 Galen, De loc. aff. VI, 6 (Kühn VIII, 449-50; transl. Siegel, 196).
    93 Galen, De simpl. med. temp. et fac., VI, 1 (Kühn XI, 808). Cf. Dioscurides, Materia medica, ed. Wellmann, I, 103; transl. Berendes, I, 134; Nilsson, Griechische Religion I, 433-7; Riddle, Contraception and abortion, 61. This plant was well-known for its moderating influence on sexual lust and is often referred to. In early modern Europe, however, it was also known as an aid to conception (see Gélis, History of childbirth, 29).

    94 cf. Löw, Aramäische Pflanzennamen, 320-1; cf. Galen, De alim. fac. I,
    
    
    

[^28]:    95 Cf. Rufus of Ephesus, 64-84; Galen, De loc. aff. VI, 6 (Kühn VIII, 439-441); transl. Siegel 192-3); Oribasius, Synopsis IX, 37; Alexander of Tralles XI, 7; Paul of Aegina, op. cit., III, 55.

    96 Galen, De causis symptomatum (Kühn VII, 150, 267); Paul of Aegina (ibid.) only mentions the first cause.

    97 Amorous toying: Arab. imdhā' cf. De Biberstein Kazimirski, Dictionnaire Arabe-Français, vol. 2, 1082: "Avoir un écoulement du sperme par suite du contact seul avec une femme;" Lane, An Arabic-English lexicon, vol. 8,3018 s.v. amdhä: "Humorem tenuem e pene emisit vir propter lusum amatorium vel osculum," Lane ibid. s.v. madhy: "a discharge of a thin humour from the dhakar, occasioned by amorous toying or kissing." According to Pseudo-Thabit ibn Qurra, op. cit., ch. 31 (p. 383) it can also be discharged by women: daw $\bar{a}$ ' yaqṭa‘ $u$ imdha' al-rijal wa-al-nisa $\bar{a}^{\prime}$.

    98 Alexander of Tralles. ibid.

[^29]:    99 For the term ihtilām see Lane, op. cit., vol. 2, 632 s.v. hulm and ihtiläm: "[The dreaming of copulation] in sleep. And [hence] both signify the experiencing an emission of the seminal fluid; properly, in dreaming; and tropically if meaning, without dreaming, whether awake or in sleep, or by extension of the signification." This term has been coined after the Greek óveıp $\omega \gamma \mu$ ós (Liddell \& Scott, Greek-English lexicon, 1231). For an extensive discussion of its occurrence in ancient sources see Pigeaud, Le rève érotique dans l'Antiquité gréco-romaine; for the Middle Ages see JacquartThomasset, op. cit., 150-1.

[^30]:    100 Galen, De comp. med. sec. loc. IX, 8 (Kühn XIII, 315); cf. Paul of Aegina, op. cit., III, 59, 1.

[^31]:    101 Galen, ibid. (Kühn XIII, 316); cf. Paul of Aegina, ibid.
    102 Cf. Galen, De comp. med. sec. loc. IX, 8 (Kühn XIII, 315-18); Aetius of Amida, op. cit., XIV, 21; Paul of Aegina, op. cit., III, 54, 1-2; Al-Ṭabarı, op. cit., 270-1; Al-Razı1, op. cit., XI, 296, 317; Ibn Sina, op. cit., bk. 3, Fann 20, Maqāla 2.

    103 Galen, ibid. (Kühn XIII, 317).

[^32]:    104 Cf. Galen, De comp. med. sec. loc. IX, 8 (Kühn XIII, 315-8); Oribasius, Synopsis IX, 36 ( $=$ Ad Eunapium IV, 103); Aetius of Amida, op. cit., XIV, 20; Paul of Aegina, op. cit., III, 54, 2-3; Ibn Sina, op. cit., vol. 3, 553-4.

    105 Galen (De comp. med. sec. loc. IX, 8; Kühn XIII, 317) states that after the washing it should be plastered with dry, pounded myrtle and common Alexanders; cf. Oribasius, Synopsis IX, 36, ll. 11-12 (= Ad Eunapium IV, 103); Paul of Aegina, op. cit., III, 54, 3, 11. 1-2.

    106 Firdaws al-hikma, 271, ll. 4-6.
    107 Galen (ibid.; Kühn XIII, 317); Paul of Aegina, op. cit., III, 54, 3.

[^33]:    108 Săūur (b. Sahl, d. 869), a Christian physician practising in Gondeshāpar, author of a pharmacopoeia used in hospitals and pharmacies (see Oliver Kahl, Sābūr ibn Sahl's Dispensatorium parvum (al-Aqräbādhin alsaghir) (Doct. thesis), Manchester 1992; cf. Ullmann, op. cit., 300.

[^34]:    ${ }^{109}$ Op. cit., III, 60, Il. 21-2, 26-8.
    110 Transl. Adams, The seven books of Paulus Aegineta, III, 60.

[^35]:    ${ }^{111}$ Some Western medical treatises as, for instance, the Lilium medicinae of Bernard de Gordon (fl. 1283-1308) follow a similar pattern, starting their discussion of women's diseases with the subject of menstrual retention; cf. Helen Rodnite Lemay, Women's Secrets, 45.

    112 See, for instance, Galen, De usu partium XIV (Helmreich II, 296301); translation May II, 628-32.

    113 It should be noted that already Aristotle (HA 608a21-28, 33-b18) maintained that women have psychological and ethical characteristics inferior to those of men because of their physical inferiority. For an extensive discussion of this theory see Lloyd, Science, Folklore and Ideology. Studies in the Life Sciences in Ancient Greece, 94-111; Weisser, op. cit., 86-9; Green, op. cit., 41-6.

    114 Soranus, Gynecology, 26-7; cf. Green, op. cit., 26-7.

[^36]:    115 Al-Majusí, Kāmil al-sinā‘a, Part 1, bk. 9, ch. 39. According to Green (op. cit., 110-11) it is precisely this application of Galen's categories which makes this chapter the most original of the many chapters he devotes to gynaecology.

    116 This cause is also stated by William of Saliceto in his Summa conservationis et curationis, which was written in 1285; his general description of this disease is in line with that of Ibn al-Jazzar; see Rodnite Lemay, op. cit., 45.

    117 Soranus, op. cit., 133; Green, op. cit., 93.

[^37]:    118 Galen, De locis affectis VI, 5 (Kühn VIII,434); transl. Siegel, 190.
    119 Galen, ibid. (Kühn VIII, 435).
    120 Transl. Siegel, 191.

[^38]:    121 Cf. Ḩunayn ibn Ishạq, Bergsträsser, no. 49; Ullmann, op. cit., 41. The Ms I consulted was Wellcome Or. 14a, fol. 169b; see Iskandar, Catalogue, 73.

    122 Galen, De venae sectione adversus Erasistratum (Kühn XI, 204); see Green, op. cit., 112-13.

    123 Galen, In. Hipp. Epidemiorum Comm.; eds. Wenkebach and Pfaff, bk. VI. comm. III. 81. 11. 11-13.

[^39]:    124 Al-Majusi, op. cit., part 2, bk. 8. ch. 11; Green, op. cit., 112.
    125 Galen, De locis affectis VI, 5 (Kühn VIII, 435).

[^40]:    126 Transl. Siegel, 191.
    127 Hippocrates, Aphorisms V, 37, 38, 39, 50, 52 (Littré IV, 544, 550; Jones, 166, 168, 171); Galen, Hippocratis Aphorismi et Galeni in eos commentarii, Kühn XVIIB, 827-32, 842-5; see Green, op. cit., 38, 44-5.

[^41]:    128 Hippocrates, On women's diseases I (Littré VIII, chs 1, 7, 32). For the history of this disease and the problems involved in its identification see especially the monograph by Veith, Hysteria: the History of a Disease.

    129 Galen, Über die Anatomie der Gebärmutter, ed. Nickel, 40-1 (Berlin 1971); English translation based on Kühn's Greek edition by Charles Goss, "On the Anatomy of the Uterus," Anatomical Record 144, 1962, 79; see as well his De locis affectis affectis VI, 5 (Kühn VIII, 426; transl. Siegel, 187). My discussion of Galen's theory of hysterical suffocation and its treatment is based on Green's extensive treatment of this subject; cf. op. cit., 47-50.

    130 Galen, De methodo medendi ad Glauconem I, 15 (Kühn XI, 54); translation Green, op. cit., 50.

    131 Diepgen, Frau und Frauenheilkunde in der Kultur des Mittelalters, 146.

[^42]:    132 Galen, De comp. med. sec. loc. IX, 10 (Kühn XIII 319); De locis affectis VI, 5 (Kühn VIII, 414, 426; transl. Siegel, 183, 187) cf. PseudoGalen, Definitiones medicae (Kühn XIX, 428, CCC).
    ${ }^{133}$ Galen, De locis affectis VI, 5 (Kühn VIII, 414-15; transl. Siegel, 183).
    134 Galen, De locis affectis VI, 5 (Kühn VIII, 417; transl. Siegel, 184).

[^43]:    135 See Jacquart-Thomasset, op. cit., 61-71.
    136 Ibid., 174.
    137 Hippocrates, On Women's Diseases I (Littré VIII, ch. 7, 32).
    138 Galen, De locis affectis VI, 5 (Kühn, VIII, 417; transl. Siegel, 184).

[^44]:    139 Cf. the quotation from his De methodo medendi ad Glauconem, note 128 above.

    140 Hippocrates' Aphorisms V, 59 (Littré, IV, 554; Jones, 174); Galen, Hippocratis Aphorismi et Galeni in eos commentarii (Kühn XVII, 857-8); see Green, op. cit., 38.

    141 Soranus, op. cit., 153; this rejection was in the High Middle Ages reiterated by Moschion; cf. Jacquart-Thomasset, op. cit., 174.

[^45]:    142 Al-Majusĩ, op. cit., part 2, bk. 8, ch. 12; English translation by the present author. In case a woman's circumstances are such that she cannot have sexual intercourse with a man, al-Majasi recommends the midwife to dip her finger in fragrant oil and rub the orifice of the uterus. This will, according to him, have the same effect as coitus, it will warm the seed so that it will be expelled and the woman will become relaxed (ibid.). For similar advices given in medieval Western Europe by Arnold of Villanova (13th cent.) and John of Gaddesden (14th cent.) see Jacquart-Thomasset, op. cit., 176.
    ${ }^{143}$ Hippocrates, On Women's Diseases II (Littré VIII, ch. 127, 275).

[^46]:    Ibn al－Jazzār
    Fa－in kana hudūthu l－warami fī muqaddami l－rahimi ittaba＇a dhalika waj‘un fí l－qubli shadïdun ma＇a ḥusri l－bawli，fa－ in kāna l－waramu fī fami l－ rahimi ittaba＇a dhālika waj＇u $l$－ surrati wa－al－maq＇adati，fa－idha adkhalat al－qabilatu iṣba＇ahā wajadat fama l－rahimi munṭa－ biqan jasiyyan．Wa－in kana l－ waramu fī jānibi l－rahimi l－ mu＇akhkhari ittaba＇a dhālika waj＇un shadīdun fì l－zuhri wa－ ihtibāsu l－ţabi＇ati wa－alamun fí mā dūna l－sharāsíf．

[^47]:    cit．，58）．This passage refutes Blumenfeld－Kosinski＇s statement that ＂Abulcasis assigns the use of the speculum to the midwife＂（op．cit．，95）．

    148 Op．cit．，bk．3，64，ll．8－16

[^48]:    ${ }^{153}$ Op. cit. III, 66, 1, ll. 24-6.
    154 Transl. Adams III, 66.
    ${ }^{155}$ Op. cit., III, 66, 1, 11. 27-31; cf. Pseudo-Galen, Definitiones medicae (Kühn XIX, 428, CCXCIX).

[^49]:    156 Transl. Adams III, 66.
    157 Dioscurides. Wellmann I. 128: transl. Berendes I. 183.

[^50]:    158 Soranus, op. cit., 205; Paul of Aegina, op. cit., III, 72.
    159 Dioscurides, Wellmann, op. cit., note 62 above, bk. 2, ch. 80 ; Berendes, op. cit., note 62 above, bk. 2, ch. 98.

    160 Hippocrates, On Women's Diseases II, Littré VIII, ch. 131, 279-81; Green, op. cit., 21-2.

[^51]:    161 Cf. Soranus, op. cit., I, 14-16; Oribasius, Synopsis V, 1; Paul of Aegina, op. cit., I, 1 .

    162 Galen, Hippocratis Aphorismi et Galeni in eos commentarii (Kühn XVIIB, bk. 4, 652-3).

    163 Ibn Sinā, op. cit, III, Fann 21, Maqāla 3; 573.

[^52]:    164 Cf . ch. 9 where this lust is one of the symptoms of a woman suffering fromı amenorrhea.

    165 Soranus, op. cit., I, 15. For an extensive discussion of this phenomenon in early modern Western Europe see Gélis, History of childbirth, 56-8.
    ${ }^{166}$ De locis affectis, V, 6 (Kühn VIII, 343; transl. Siegel, 154).

[^53]:    167 Pseudo-Galen, Definitiones medicae (Kühn XIX, CDLVII, 455-6); cf. Paul of Aegina, op. cit., III, 76.

    168 Translation by the present author.

[^54]:    ${ }^{169}$ Al-Tabari, op. cit., 280, ll. 8-9.
    170 Blumenfeld-Kosinski, op. cit., 34. For a survey of different kinds of magical means used to facilitate childbirth see Gélis, History of childbirth, 115-19.

[^55]:    171 See MS Gotha 2034, fol. 20a; the name of this author was often corrupted; al-Razzı, for instance, called him "Itharisfus"; see Sezgin, op. cit., 57. These magical prescriptions are quite extraordinary in the light of the fact that none of the other Arab authors listed by Musallam in his survey of contraceptives and abortifacients, mentions a magical one other than two special uses of cyclamen (see his Sex and society in Islam, 77-88; see as well Monica Green, Constantinus Africanus, 56, 66, n. 38). It is reasonable to suppose that Ibn al-Jazzarr's prescription of magical remedies reflects a social reality, nameiy, that these were the only drugs which the poor could afford to buy since "normal" drugs were very expensive, especially the more compound ones.
    172 For an extensive treatment of this subject in Islam see Musallam, op. cit., ch. 4: "Arabic medicine and birth control;" see as well Riddle, op. cit., 127-34.

[^56]:    173 Musallam, op. cit., 69. Green (Transmission, 225), not paying attention to the Țibb al-fuqarā', remarks that Ibn al-Jazzarar "appeared to be uncomfortable with the ethics of abortion"; about his warning she states that "it seems naive at best"; see as well Green, Constantinus Africanus, 50-1; for a similar warning raised by al-Majosı see ibid., p. 55. Personally I do not think that the Hippocratic Oath's prohibition of abortion played any role in Ibn al-Jazzär's warning, since in that case he would, in my opinion, have phrased this warning differently (cf. Riddle, op. cit., 7-10).

    174 Ibn Siñă, op. cit., III, Fann 21, Maqāala 3, 579; translation Musallam, op. cit., 69; see as well Riddle, op. cit., 128.

    175 The tar Dioscurides is referring to, is that derived from the cedar; cf. Dioscurides, ed. Wellmann, op. cit. I, 77; transl. Berendes I, 105.

    176 Musallam, op. cit., 97.
    177 MS Gotha 2034. fol. 20a.

[^57]:    178 Hippocrates, Aphorisms V, 49, Littré, IV, 550; Soranus, op. cit., 198.

    179 Al-Ṭabarı, op. cit., 280.

[^58]:    180 Al-Țabanì, ibid.
    181 Soranus, op. cit., 198. For different means applied in early modern Western Europe to expel the placenta see Gélis, History of childbirth, 162-4.

    182 Op. cit., III, 76, 1; 11. 20-1.
    183 Transl. Adams. III. 77.

[^59]:    184 Op. cit., II, 76, 1; 11. 21-3.
    185 Transl. Adams III. 77.

[^60]:    186 Paul of Aegina, op. cit., III, 78.
    187 Hippocrates, Aphorisms (Littré IV, 570, no. 28); Galen, In Hippocratis aphorismos commentarius (Kühn XVIIIA, 41).

[^61]:    188 Cf. Hippocrates, Aphorisms (Littré IV, 570, no. 30); Galen, op. cit., (Kühn XVIIIA, 44).

    189 Hippocrates, Aphorisms (Littré IV, 570, no. 29); Galen, op. cit. (Kühn XVIIIA, 43-4).

[^62]:    190 Professor Daiber informed me that the catalogue of the Tarim manuscripts (vol. 2, p. 210) mentions the year 1198/1784.

[^63]:    ${ }^{1}$ De arte medica V (Kühn I, 319).

[^64]:    ${ }^{2}$ Aristotle, Problems, ed. and transl. by Hett, X, 24.

[^65]:    ${ }^{3}$ Is Satyrium (see Dietrich, Dioscurides Triumphans, III, 120).
    4 Diosc., Materia medica, ed. Wellmann, III, 128; transl. Berendes III, 133.
    5 For this author (c. 777-857), a hospital-director and court physician of the caliphs in Baghdad see Ullmann, Medizin, 112-15; Sezgin, GAS, III, 231-6.
    ${ }^{6}$ One dirham is 3, 125 grams; cf. Hinz, Masse und Gewichte, 3.
    ${ }^{7}$ One mithqāl is 4,464 grams; see Hinz, op. cit., 4.

[^66]:    8 One hazelnut (bunduqa) is in some places one dirham and in others $12 / 3$ mithqāl; cf. Kamal, Encyclopaedia, 447.

[^67]:    ${ }^{9}$ One walnut (jawza) is either 6 or 7 mithqāls; cí. Hinz, op. cit., 12.
    10 For the different weights of one ounce see Hinz, op. cit., 34-5; in Egypt it was 37,5 grams.

[^68]:    11 This reading is according to MSS Oxford, Berlin, and Teheran. MS Dresden reads "ghamz thadan."

[^69]:    12 One habba: is 0,0446 grams; cf. Hinz, op. cit., 12-3.
    13 Galen, De simpl. med. temp. et fac., VI, 1 (Kühn XI, 808).

[^70]:    14 Galen, De comp. med. sec. loc. IX, 8 (Kühn XIII, 316-7).

[^71]:    ${ }^{15}$ For the correct vocalisation (shajjiznaiyā)? of this electuary see Ullmann, Welt des Orients 19 (1988): 205.
    16 For this electuary see Ullmann, op. cit., 395-6, 349; Schmucker, Die pflanzliche und mineralische Materia medica im Firdaus al-hikma, 48.
    ${ }^{17}$ See Săbur ibn Sahl, Dispensatorium, ed. Kahl, 155. Instead of frankincense (kundur), Kahls' edition has hazelnut (bunduq).

[^72]:    ${ }^{18}$ Dioscurides, op. cit., ed. Wellmann I, 74; translation Berendes I, 102.

[^73]:    19 This quotation is not to be found in the still extant writings of Rufus, as edited by Daremberg-Ruelle; cf. Soranus, Gynecology, I, 4 (p. 19).
    ${ }^{20}$ This quotation from Rufus is not preserved in his extant writings.

[^74]:    ${ }^{21}$ See previous note.

[^75]:    ${ }^{22}$ For the different weights of the ratl, which was 437,5 grams in North Africa in the 11th-12th centuries, see Hinz, op. cit., 27-33.
    23 Galen, In. Hipp. Epidemiorum Comm.; eds. Wenkebach and Pfaff, bk. VI, comm. III, 81, ll. 11-13.
    24 One daniq is 0,55 grams, cf. Levey, al-Kindī, 25.
    25 For this compound remedy, whose major component was aloe see Ullmann, op. cit., 296.

[^76]:    ${ }^{26}$ For the composition of this compound drug see al-Tabarı, Firdaws alhikma, 452, 1. 11-19; cf. Schmucker, op. cit., 194, no. 296; cf. Lehmann, Thäbit ibn Qurra, 872-3.

[^77]:    27 This work is not mentioned in the bibliographical list of his works by Ibn Abī Uṣaybi'a, Uyūn al-anbā', 255; cf. Sezgin, op. cit., 233-6.

[^78]:    28 Rāmik; cf. Levey, op. cit., 270-1, no. 109: "an electuary of gallnut ('afs) with aromatic drugs; Siggel, Jābir, 218: "zusammengesetztes Parfum aus Galläpfeln, unreifen Datteln, bzw. Rinde von Granatäpfelholz, Moschus u.a.; cf. Wiedemann, Gesammelte Schriften III, 760f, 821 ff, 825 f .
    ${ }^{29}$ Tin makhtam; cf. Siggel, op. cit., 215: "Eine rötliche Erde aus Chios, die versiegelt nach Byzanz gebracht wurde, vielleicht ein Al-Mg-Silikat;" Golz, Studien, 254, Schmucker, op. cit., 293, no. 476.
    ${ }^{30} \mathrm{Cf}$. Bk. III. ch. 8.

[^79]:    ${ }^{31}$ Dioscurides, op. cit., ed. Wellmann I, 7; translation Berendes I, 6.
    32 Dioscurides, op. cit., ed. Wellmann V, 99; translation Berendes V, 115.

[^80]:    33 White ṭabashir: Levey, op cit., 300, no. 186: 'It is a kind of 'lime' as a concretion in the knots of a particular species of bamboo. It is 'chalk' in Iran and Iraq today. The word is Pers. but may have come from Sans. twak-kshïrä, indicating the Bambusa arundinacea Schreb..."; cf. 2, K. al-Saydana fi al-tibb, 218, n.1: "Tabashīr denotes the young shoots, seeds, and siliceous concretion of Bambusa arundinacea Retz. (family, Graminae)."

[^81]:    ${ }^{34}$ Galen, De locis affectis VI, 5 (Kühn VIII, 414-15).

[^82]:    ${ }^{35}$ Its weight is 2,34 grams; cf. Hinz, op. cit., 10.
    ${ }^{36}$ De antidotis (Kühn XIV, 181); Galen does not state that it is good for harsh winds, but for very severe pains; nor does he state that this drug should be heated in the sun, but pounded. This mistake may go back to a faulty reading by the copyists, who may have read yuskhan (heated) instead of yushaq (pounded).

[^83]:    37 Galen, De venaesectione adversus Erasistratum (Kühn XI, 303).

[^84]:    ${ }^{38}$ Dioscurides, op. cit., ed. Wellmann I, 7; transl. Berendes I, 8.

[^85]:    39 Paul of Aegina, Opera, VII, 24, 3.

[^86]:    ${ }^{40}$ Usually three species are distinguished of the birth-wort (Aristolochia L.), namely, long (A. longa L.), round (A. rotunda L.), and common (A. clematis L.) This last species in particular was often applied in the case of women's diseases and was therefore called "uterus-root" (Dietrich, Diosc. Triumphans III, 4).

[^87]:    ${ }^{41}$ Dioscurides, op. cit., ed. Wellmann II, 102; transl. Berendes II, 124.
    42 Dioscurides, op. cit., ed. Wellmann I, 128; transl. Berendes I, 183.

[^88]:    ${ }^{43}$ Dioscurides, op. cit., ed. Wellmann II, 80; transl. Berendes II, 98.
    ${ }^{44}$ Cf. Zād al-musäfir, bk. 4. ch. 20.

[^89]:    45 Galen, Hippocratis Aphorismi et Galeni in eos commentarii (Kühn XVIIB, bk. 4, 652-3).

[^90]:    ${ }^{46}$ De antidotis (Kühn XIV, 276-7).

[^91]:    47 The tar Dioscurides is referring to is that derived from the cedar; cf. Dioscurides, op. cit., ed. Wellmann I, 77; translation Berendes I, 105.

[^92]:    ${ }^{48}$ Cf. Dioscurides, op. cit., ed. Wellmann I, 77; transl. Berendes I, 104.
    49 Cf. Dioscurides, op. cit., ed. Wellmann II, 164; transl. Berendes II, 193.
    ${ }^{50}$ Cf. Dioscurides, op. cit., ed. Wellmann II, 109; transl. Berendes II, 132.
    ${ }^{51}$ Cf. Dioscurides, op. cit., ed. Wellmann III, 3; transl. Berendes III, 3.
    52 Dioscurides, op. cit., ed. Wellmann III, 4; transl. Berendes III, 4.
    53 Cf. Dioscurides, op. cit., ed. Wellmann I, 14; transl. Berendes I, 13.
    ${ }^{54}$ Cf. Dioscurides, op. cit., ed. Wellmann I, 6; transl. Berendes I, 5.
    ${ }^{55}$ Cf. Dioscurides, op. cit., ed. Wellmann II, 164; transl. Berendes II, 193.
    56 Cf. Dioscurides, op. cit., ed. Wellmann IV, 150; transl. Berendes IV, 155.

[^93]:    ${ }^{57}$ Cf. Dioscurides, op. cit., ed. Wellmann II, 24; transl. Berendes II, 26.
    58 Cf. Dioscurides, op. cit., ed. Wellmann III, 6; transl. Berendes III, 6.
    59 Cf. Dioscurides, op. cit., ed. Wellmann III, 7; transl. Berendes III, 7.
    ${ }^{60}$ Dioscurides (op. cit., ed. Wellmann IV, 170; transl. Berendes IV, 168) states that the juice of scammonia, used for a suppository in the vagina, kills the foetus. The pulp of colocynth has, according to him, a similar effect (ibid. ed. Wellmann IV, 176; transl. Berendes IV, 175).
    ${ }^{61}$ Cf. Dioscurides, op. cit., ed. Wellmann II, 120; transl. Berendes II, 146; according to Islamic embryology the coagulation of the semen is one of the phases of the development of the foetus (see Musallam, op. cit., 53-4).
    ${ }^{62}$ Cf. Dioscurides, op. cit., ed. Wellmann III, 35; transl. Berendes III, 37.
    ${ }^{63}$ Cf. Dioscurides, op. cit., ed. Wellmann III, 34; transl. Berendes III, 36.

[^94]:    ${ }^{64}$ Cf. Dioscurides, op. cit., ed. Wellmann III, 36; transl. Berendes III, 38.
    65 Cf. Dioscurides, op. cit., ed. Wellmann I, 1 ; transl. Berendes I, 1.
    66 For the different weights of the qirāt, namely, 0,195 grams, 0,2004 grams, and 0,2232 grams see Hinz, op.cit., 27.
    67 Cf. Dioscurides, op. cit., ed. Wellmann I, 78; transl. Berendes I, 106.
    68 Cf. Dioscurides, op. cit., ed. Wellmann II, 159; transl. Berendes II, 188
    ${ }^{69}$ Cf. Dioscurides, op. cit., ed. Wellmann III, 83; transl.Berendes III, 87.
    70 Cf. Dioscurides, op. cit., ed. Wellmann III, 143; transl. Berendes III, 150.
    ${ }^{71}$ Cf. Dioscurides, op. cit., ed Wellmann V, 106; transl. Berendes V, 122.
    ${ }^{72}$ Cf. Dioscurides, op. cit., ed. Wellmann V, 107; transl. Berendes V, 123.

[^95]:    ${ }^{73}$ Birdhawn; cf. Lane, Dictionary, 186: "A horse of mean breed, or of coarse make; a jade: but commonly applied to a hack, or hackney; a horse for ordinary use and for journeying."
    74 See ch. 9.

[^96]:    75 Galen, De venaesectione adversus Erasistratum (Kühn XI, 304-5).
    76 Habb al-muntin; cf. Dozy, Supplément, I, 241: "nom d'un médicament composé et purgatif, dont Rhazès donne la recette." In the pharmacological part of al-Razi's $K$. al-hawi, however, this drug does not feature. For its composition see Ibn Sinā, K. al-qānūn, V, Jumla 1, Maqāla 9 (p. 391). He distinguishes between a longer and smaller variety and the one composed by al-Kindi.
    77 Stomaticum; cf. Schmucker, op. cit., 74, no. 45 asțumākhíqūn: "Leitet sich vom Griechischen $\sigma \tau$ oرaхıкóv her. Ein purgierendes Heilmittel"; Dietrich, Zum Drogenhandel, 37-41.
    78 Theodoretus; cf. Schmucker, op. cit., 136, no. 182; "Ein zusammengesetztes Heilmittel, von griech. Өعóסopoc; for its composition see Siggel, op. cit., 220.

[^97]:    79 This work by Qustā ibn Luqa (around 205/820-300/912), famous Christian doctor, scholar and translator, has been preserved in MS Ayasofya 3724 (222b-236b) under the title Risala físifat al-khadar wa-anwā'ihi waasbābihi wa-'ilajihi 'alā ra'y Jalīnūs wa-Buqrät; it is cited by ar-Razzi as K. fi al-khadar (K. al-häwi I, 70); cf. Sezgin, op. cit., 270-4. For the author see my Qusța ibn Läqā's Medical Regime for the Pilgrims to Mecca, 1-2.
    80 I have not been able to trace this quotation in the existing writings by Galen.

[^98]:    81 Dioscurides, op. cit., ed. Wellmann, II, 80; transl. Berendes II, 98.
    82 Dioscurides, ibid.
    ${ }^{83}$ Theriac; Ullmann, op. cit., 321: "Aus griechischen und indischen Quellen lernten die Araber zahlreiche Giftarten, ihre Wirkungsweisen und die Mittel zu ihrer Bekämpfung kennen; $\dot{\eta} \theta \eta \rho ı \kappa \kappa \grave{\eta}$ ( $\dot{\alpha} v \tau i ́ \delta o \tau o \varsigma)$ wird arabisch zu tiryaq. Galen, De Theriaca ad Pisonem; De Theriaca ad Pamphilianum (Kühn XIV, 1-310) describes the theriacs in detail.

[^99]:    ${ }^{84}$ For the same prescription with minor variants see Hamarneh-Sonnedecker, al-Zahrawi, 95-6; 123. It is not clear to me why Hamarneh-Sonnedecker translate shabram (milk of Euphorbia pityusa) as "boxthorn" (= 'awsaj).
    85 One qist was in Egypt 2,106 litres; in 'Iraq a large one was 2,4336 litres and a small one 1,2158 litres (Hinz, op. cit., 50).
    86 For the same prescription using different weights and using sesame instead of vinegar see Hamarneh-Sonnedecker, op. cit., 88, 109.

[^100]:    87 This drug was very popular throughout the Middle Ages, especially as a remedy for forgetfulness; it features prominently in Ibn al-Jazzăr's Risāla fi al-nisyän wa-'ilājihi (see my Ibn al-Jazzär on forgetfulness and its treatment).

[^101]:    88 Ibn al-Jazzāar may be referring to two different comments by Galen on Hippocrates' Aphorisms, namely, 1. his comment on Hippocrates' aphorism that in gouty affections inflammation subsides within forty days (Aphorisms, Littré IV, 576, no. 49), where Galen confirms this statement (In Hippocratis aphorismos commentarius (Kühn XVIIIA, 84), and 2. his comment on Hippocrates' aphorism that gouty affections become active in spring and autumn (Aphorisms, Littré IV, 576, no. 55), where Galen says that they get worse in winter, especially with someone having a bad regimen (op. cit., Kühn XVIIIA, 94-5).

[^102]:    89 Cf. Sābūr ibn Sahl's Dispensatorium (ed. Kahl, 108-9) for a slightly different composition.

[^103]:    ${ }^{90}$ I have not been able to establish the identity of this physician.
    ${ }^{91}$ Dioscurides, op. cit., ed. Wellmann IV, 64; transl. Berendes IV, 65.

